

[All Documents](#)

These documents are served to you through an unaffiliated 3rd party Service Provider. The content of the document is the sole responsibility of the issuer.

[3rd-party Service Provider's Terms of Use](#)

Prospectus dated 06/25/2019 for 09260K101: BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II - Common Class Shares

[Table of Contents](#)



PROSPECTUS

70,000,000 Shares

BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II

Common Shares
\$20.00 per share

Investment Objectives. BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II (the “Trust”) is a newly-organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company with no operating history. The Trust’s investment objectives are to provide total return and income through a combination of current income, current gains and long-term capital appreciation. There can be no assurance that the Trust’s investment objectives will be achieved or that the Trust’s investment program will be successful.

Investment Advisor. The Trust’s investment adviser is BlackRock Advisors, LLC (the “Advisor”).

Investment Strategy. Under normal market conditions, the Trust will invest at least 80% of its total assets in equity securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. science and technology companies in any market capitalization range, selected for their rapid and sustainable growth potential from the development, advancement and use of science and/or technology.

As part of its investment strategy, the Trust intends to employ a strategy of writing (selling) covered call options on a portion of the common stocks in its portfolio, writing (selling) other call and put options on individual common stocks, and, to a lesser extent, writing (selling) call and put options on indices of securities and sectors of securities. This options writing strategy is intended to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust’s risk-adjusted returns.

The Trust may invest up to 20% of its total assets in equity securities issued by companies that are not science or technology companies and in debt securities issued by any issuer, including non-investment grade debt securities. The Trust’s investments in non-investment grade securities and those deemed to be of similar quality are considered speculative with respect to the issuer’s capacity to pay interest and repay principal and are commonly referred to as “junk” or “high yield” securities. See “Risks—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.”

(continued on inside front cover)

The Trust’s common shares of beneficial interest (the “common shares”) have been approved for listing on the New York Stock Exchange, subject to notice of issuance, under the symbol “BSTZ.”

No Prior History. Because the Trust is newly organized, its common shares have no history of public trading. Shares of closed-end investment companies frequently trade at a discount from their net asset value. The risk of loss due to this discount may be greater for investors expecting to sell their shares in a relatively short period after completion of the public offering.

Investing in the Trust’s common shares involves certain risks that are described in the “Risks” section beginning on page 69 of this prospectus. Certain of these risks are summarized in “Prospectus Summary—Special Risk Considerations” beginning on page 13.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	<u>Per Share</u>	<u>Total(1)</u>
Public Offering Price	\$ 20.00	\$1,400,000,000
Sales Load(2)	None	None
Proceeds to the Trust(3)	\$ 20.00	\$1,400,000,000

(notes on inside front cover)

The underwriters expect to deliver the common shares to purchasers on or about June 28, 2019.

Morgan Stanley BofA Merrill Lynch
Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc.

Arcadia Securities

D.A. Davidson & Co.

JonesTrading

Newbridge Securities Corporation

UBS Investment Bank
Oppenheimer & Co.

B. Riley Wealth Management

Incapital

Ladenburg Thalmann

Raymond James Wells Fargo Securities
RBC Capital Markets Stifel

BB&T Capital Markets

Janney Montgomery Scott

Maxim Group LLC

Pershing LLC

The date of this prospectus is June 25, 2019.

Table of Contents

(notes from previous page)

- (1) The Trust has granted the underwriters an option to purchase up to 8,734,000 additional common shares at the public offering price within 45 days of the date of this prospectus solely to cover over-allotments, if any. If such option is exercised in full, the public offering price, sales load and proceeds to the Trust will be \$1,574,680,000, \$0.00 and \$1,574,680,000, respectively. See “Underwriters.”
- (2) The Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay, from its own assets, compensation of \$0.52 per common share to the underwriters in connection with this offering. Separately, the Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay, from its own assets, an upfront structuring fee to each of Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, BofA Securities, Inc. (or an affiliate), UBS Securities LLC, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC and an upfront fee to each of Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc., Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., RBC Capital Markets, LLC, Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated, D.A. Davidson & Co. and Janney Montgomery Scott LLC. The Advisor and certain of its affiliates (and not the Trust) will pay compensation to certain registered representatives of BlackRock Investments, LLC (an affiliate of the Advisor) that participated in the marketing of the Trust’s common shares. See “Underwriters—Additional Compensation Paid by the Advisor.”
- (3) The Advisor has agreed to pay all organizational expenses of the Trust and all offering costs associated with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor.

(continued from previous page)

Investment Strategy (continued). Science and technology companies are companies whose products, processes or services, in the Advisor’s view, are being, or are expected to be, significantly benefited by the use or commercial application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries. These companies include companies that, in the Advisor’s view, derive a competitive advantage by the application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries to grow their business or increase their competitive advantage, as well as companies that utilize science and/or technology as an agent of change to significantly enhance their business opportunities.

Science, technology and science- or technology-related companies may include companies operating in any industry, including, but not limited to software, internet software & services, IT services, hardware, communications equipment, semiconductors and semiconductor equipment, media, internet retail, consumer finance, life sciences tools & services, biotechnology, pharmaceuticals, energy, defense/aerospace, diversified telecom services and wireless telecom services. It is anticipated that the Trust’s investments will be focused on companies within such industries that the Advisor expects will generate a majority of their revenues from the development, advancement, use or sale of new and emerging, or “next generation,” science- or technology-related products, processes or services. There is no assurance, however, that any of the Trust’s assets will be invested in such companies at any time. The Advisor determines, in its discretion, whether a company is a science, technology or science- or technology-related company.

The Trust may invest in companies of any market capitalization located anywhere in the world, including companies located in emerging markets. Equity securities in which the Trust may invest include common stocks, preferred stocks, convertible securities, warrants, depositary receipts, exchange-traded funds and equity interests in real estate investment trusts and master limited partnerships. The Trust may invest in shares of companies through initial public offerings (“IPOs”). The Trust may also invest, without limit, in privately placed or restricted securities (including in Rule 144A securities, which are privately placed securities purchased by qualified institutional buyers), illiquid securities and securities in which no secondary market is readily available, including those of private companies. Issuers of these securities may not have a class of securities registered, and may not be subject to periodic reporting, pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended. Under normal market conditions, the Trust currently intends to invest up to 25% of its total assets, measured at the time of investment, in such securities. The Trust expects certain of such investments to be in “pre-IPO securities,” which are securities of new and early stage companies, often funded by venture capital, whose securities have not been offered to the public and are not publicly traded. Foreign securities in which the Trust may invest may be U.S. dollar-denominated or non-U.S. dollar-denominated.

The Trust will concentrate its investments in companies operating in one or more industries within the technology group of industries.

[Table of Contents](#)

Over time, as the Trust writes covered call options over more of its portfolio, its ability to benefit from capital appreciation on the underlying securities may become more limited, and the Trust will lose money to the extent that it writes covered call options and the securities on which it writes these options appreciate above the exercise price of the option. Therefore, over time, the Advisor may choose to decrease its use of a covered call options writing strategy to the extent that it may negatively impact the Trust's ability to benefit from capital appreciation.

Leverage. The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares. The Trust is, however, permitted to borrow money or issue debt securities in an amount up to 33 1/3% of its Managed Assets (50% of its net assets), and issue preferred shares in an amount up to 50% of its Managed Assets (100% of its net assets). "Managed Assets" means the total assets of the Trust (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes) minus the sum of the Trust's accrued liabilities (other than money borrowed for investment purposes). Although it has no present intention to do so, the Trust reserves the right to borrow money from banks or other financial institutions, or issue debt securities or preferred shares, in the future if it believes that market conditions would be conducive to the successful implementation of a leveraging strategy through borrowing money or issuing debt securities or preferred shares. See "Leverage."

The use of leverage, if employed, is subject to numerous risks. When leverage is employed, the Trust's net asset value ("NAV"), the market price of the Trust's common shares and the yield to holders of the Trust's common shares will be more volatile than if leverage was not used. For example, a rise in short-term interest rates, which currently are near historically low levels, generally will cause the Trust's NAV to decline more than if the Trust had not used leverage. A reduction in the Trust's NAV may cause a reduction in the market price of the Trust's common shares. The Trust cannot assure you that the use of leverage will result in a higher yield on the Trust's common shares. Any leveraging strategy the Trust may employ may not be successful. See "Risks—Leverage Risk."

Limited Term and Eligible Tender Offer. In accordance with the Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust, the Trust intends to dissolve as of the first business day following the twelfth anniversary of the effective date of the Trust's initial registration statement, which the Trust currently expects to occur on or about June 26, 2031 (the "Dissolution Date"); provided that the Board of Trustees of the Trust (the "Board") may, by a vote of a majority of the Board and seventy-five percent (75%) of the Continuing Trustees, as defined below (a "Board Action Vote"), without shareholder approval, extend the Dissolution Date: (i) once for up to one year, and (ii) once for up to an additional six months, to a date up to and including eighteen months after the initial Dissolution Date (which date shall then become the Dissolution Date). Each holder of common shares would be paid a pro rata portion of the Trust's net assets upon dissolution of the Trust. The Board may, by a Board Action Vote, cause the Trust to conduct a tender offer, as of a date within twelve months preceding the Dissolution Date (as may be extended as described above), to all common shareholders to purchase 100% of the then outstanding common shares of the Trust at a price equal to the NAV per common share on the expiration date of the tender offer (an "Eligible Tender Offer"). The Board has established that the Trust must have at least \$200 million of aggregate net assets immediately following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer to ensure the continued viability of the Trust (the "Dissolution Threshold"). In an Eligible Tender Offer, the Trust will offer to purchase all common shares held by each common shareholder; provided that if the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets below the Dissolution Threshold, the Eligible Tender Offer will be canceled, no common shares will be repurchased and the Trust will dissolve as scheduled. If an Eligible Tender Offer is conducted and the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets greater than or equal to the Dissolution Threshold, all common shares properly tendered and not withdrawn will be purchased by the Trust pursuant to the terms of the Eligible Tender Offer. Following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, eliminate the Dissolution Date without shareholder approval and provide for the Trust's perpetual existence. There is no guarantee that the Board will eliminate the Dissolution Date following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer. The Board may, to the extent it deems appropriate and without shareholder approval, adopt a plan of liquidation at any time preceding the anticipated Dissolution Date, which plan of liquidation may set forth the terms and conditions for implementing the termination of the Trust's existence, including the commencement of the winding down of its investment operations and the making of one or more liquidating distributions to

[Table of Contents](#)

common shareholders prior to the Dissolution Date. **The Trust is not a so called “target date” or “life cycle” fund whose asset allocation becomes more conservative over time as its target date, often associated with retirement, approaches. In addition, the Trust is not a “target term” fund and thus does not seek to return the Trust’s initial public offering price per common share upon dissolution of the Trust or in an Eligible Tender Offer. The final distribution of net assets per common share upon dissolution or the price per common share in an Eligible Tender Offer may be more than, equal to or less than the initial public offering price per common share.**

You should read this prospectus, which concisely sets forth information about the Trust, before deciding whether to invest in the common shares and retain it for future reference. A Statement of Additional Information, dated June 25, 2019 containing additional information about the Trust (the “SAI”), has been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and, as amended from time to time, is incorporated by reference in its entirety into this prospectus. You can review the table of contents for the SAI on page 139 of this prospectus. You may request a free copy of the SAI by calling (800) 882-0052 or by writing to the Trust. You can get the same information for free from the Securities and Exchange Commission’s website (<http://www.sec.gov>). You may also e-mail requests for these documents to publicinfo@sec.gov. The Trust does not post a copy of the SAI on its website because the Trust’s common shares are not continuously offered, which means the SAI will not be updated after the completion of this offering and the information contained in the SAI will become outdated. In addition, you may request copies of the Trust’s semi-annual and annual reports or other information about the Trust or make shareholder inquiries by calling (800) 882-0052. The Trust’s annual and semi-annual reports, when produced, will be available on the Trust’s website (<http://www.blackrock.com>) free of charge. Information contained in, or that can be accessed through, the Trust’s website is not part of this prospectus.

Beginning on January 1, 2021, as permitted by regulations adopted by the Securities and Exchange Commission, paper copies of the Trust’s shareholder reports will no longer be sent by mail, unless you specifically request paper copies of the reports from BlackRock or from your financial intermediary, such as a broker-dealer or bank. Instead, the reports will be made available on a website, and you will be notified by mail each time a report is posted and provided with a website link to access the report.

You may elect to receive all future reports in paper free of charge. If you hold accounts directly with BlackRock, you can call (800) 882-0052 to request that you continue receiving paper copies of your shareholder reports. If you hold accounts through a financial intermediary, you can follow the instructions included with this disclosure, if applicable, or contact your financial intermediary to request that you continue to receive paper copies of your shareholder reports. Please note that not all financial intermediaries may offer this service. Your election to receive reports in paper will apply to all funds advised by BlackRock Advisors, LLC or its affiliates, or all funds held with your financial intermediary, as applicable.

If you already elected to receive shareholder reports electronically, you will not be affected by this change and you need not take any action. You may elect to receive electronic delivery of shareholder reports and other communications by contacting your financial intermediary, if you hold accounts through a financial intermediary. Please note that not all financial intermediaries may offer this service.

You should not construe the contents of this prospectus as legal, tax or financial advice. You should consult with your own professional advisors as to the legal, tax, financial or other matters relevant to the suitability of an investment in the Trust.

The Trust’s common shares do not represent a deposit or an obligation of, and are not guaranteed or endorsed by, any bank or other insured depository institution, and are not federally insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Federal Reserve Board or any other government agency.

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<u>Prospectus Summary</u>	1
<u>Summary of Trust Expenses</u>	45
<u>The Trust</u>	47
<u>Use of Proceeds</u>	47
<u>The Trust's Investments</u>	47
<u>Leverage</u>	64
<u>Risks</u>	69
<u>How the Trust Manages Risk</u>	111
<u>Management of the Trust</u>	111
<u>Net Asset Value</u>	114
<u>Distributions</u>	117
<u>Dividend Reinvestment Plan</u>	118
<u>Description of Shares</u>	120
<u>Certain Provisions in the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Bylaws</u>	121
<u>Limited Term and Eligible Tender Offer</u>	123
<u>Closed-End Fund Structure</u>	125
<u>Repurchase of Common Shares</u>	126
<u>Tax Matters</u>	126
<u>Underwriters</u>	133
<u>Custodian and Transfer Agent</u>	137
<u>Administration and Accounting Services</u>	137
<u>Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	137
<u>Legal Opinions</u>	138
<u>Privacy Principles of the Trust</u>	138
<u>Table of Contents for the Statement of Additional Information</u>	139

You should rely only on the information contained or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. The Trust has not, and the underwriters have not, authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. The Trust is not, and the underwriters are not, making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this prospectus. The Trust's business, financial condition and prospects may have changed since that date.

[Table of Contents](#)

PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

This is only a summary of certain information contained in this prospectus relating to BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II. This summary may not contain all of the information that you should consider before investing in our common shares. You should review the more detailed information contained in this prospectus and in the Statement of Additional Information (the “SAI”).

The Trust

BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II is a newly organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company with no operating history. Throughout this prospectus, we refer to BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II simply as the “Trust” or as “we,” “us” or “our.” See “The Trust.”

The Offering

The Trust is offering 70,000,000 common shares of beneficial interest at \$20.00 per share through a group of underwriters (the “Underwriters”) led by Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, BofA Securities, Inc., UBS Securities LLC, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC. The common shares of beneficial interest are called “common shares” in the rest of this prospectus. You must purchase at least 100 common shares (\$2,000) in order to participate in this offering. The Trust has given the Underwriters an option to purchase up to 8,734,000 additional common shares within 45 days of the date of this prospectus solely to cover over-allotments, if any. See “Underwriters.” BlackRock Advisors, LLC (the “Advisor”), the Trust’s investment adviser, has agreed to pay compensation of \$0.52 per common share to the Underwriters in connection with the offering. The Advisor also has agreed to pay all of the Trust’s organizational expenses and all offering costs associated with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor.

Limited Term and Eligible Tender Offer

In accordance with the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust, dated February 20, 2019 as amended from time to time (the “Agreement and Declaration of Trust”), the Trust intends to dissolve as of the first business day following the twelfth anniversary of the effective date of the Trust’s initial registration statement, which the Trust currently expects to occur on or about June 26, 2031 (the “Dissolution Date”); provided that the Board of Trustees of the Trust (the “Board,” and the members thereof, “Trustees”) may, by a vote of a majority of the Board and seventy-five percent (75%) of the members of the Board who either (i) have been a member of the Board for a period of at least thirty-six months (or since the commencement of the Trust’s operations, if less than thirty-six months) or (ii) were nominated to serve as a member of the Board by a majority of the Continuing Trustees then members of the Board (the “Continuing Trustees”) (a “Board Action Vote”), without shareholder approval, extend the Dissolution Date: (i) once for up to one year, and (ii) once for up to an additional six months, to a date up to and including eighteen months after the initial Dissolution Date (which date shall then become the Dissolution Date). In determining whether to extend the Dissolution Date, the Board may consider the inability

Table of Contents

to sell the Trust's assets in a time frame consistent with dissolution due to lack of market liquidity or other extenuating circumstances. Additionally, the Board may determine that market conditions are such that it is reasonable to believe that, with an extension, the Trust's remaining assets will appreciate and generate capital appreciation and income in an amount that, in the aggregate, is meaningful relative to the cost and expense of continuing the operation of the Trust. Each holder of common shares would be paid a pro rata portion of the Trust's net assets upon dissolution of the Trust.

Beginning one year before the Dissolution Date (the "Wind-Down Period"), the Trust may begin liquidating all or a portion of the Trust's portfolio, and may deviate from its investment policies and may not achieve its investment objectives. During the Wind-Down Period (or in anticipation of an Eligible Tender Offer, as defined below), the Trust's portfolio composition may change as more of its portfolio holdings are called or sold and portfolio holdings are disposed of in anticipation of liquidation.

As of a date within twelve months preceding the Dissolution Date (as may be extended as described above), the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, cause the Trust to conduct a tender offer to all common shareholders to purchase 100% of the then outstanding common shares of the Trust at a price equal to the net asset value ("NAV") per common share on the expiration date of the tender offer (an "Eligible Tender Offer"). The Board has established that the Trust must have at least \$200 million of aggregate net assets immediately following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer to ensure the continued viability of the Trust (the "Dissolution Threshold"). In an Eligible Tender Offer, the Trust will offer to purchase all common shares held by each common shareholder; provided that if the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets below the Dissolution Threshold, the Eligible Tender Offer will be canceled and no common shares will be repurchased pursuant to the Eligible Tender Offer. Instead, the Trust will begin (or continue) liquidating its portfolio and proceed to dissolve on or about the Dissolution Date. Regardless of whether the Eligible Tender Offer is completed or canceled, the Advisor will pay all costs and expenses associated with the making of an Eligible Tender Offer, other than brokerage and related transaction costs associated with the disposition of portfolio investments in connection with the Eligible Tender Offer, which will be borne by the Trust and its common shareholders. The Eligible Tender Offer would be made, and common shareholders would be notified thereof, in accordance with the requirements of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "Investment Company Act"), the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), and the applicable tender offer rules thereunder (including Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E under the Exchange Act). If the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets

Table of Contents

greater than or equal to the Dissolution Threshold, all common shares properly tendered and not withdrawn will be purchased by the Trust pursuant to the terms of the Eligible Tender Offer. The Trust's purchase of tendered common shares pursuant to a tender offer will have tax consequences for tendering common shareholders and may have tax consequences for non-tendering common shareholders. In addition, the Trust would continue to be subject to its obligations with respect to its issued and outstanding borrowings, preferred stock or debt securities, if any. An Eligible Tender Offer may be commenced upon approval of the Board, without a shareholder vote. The Trust is not required to conduct an Eligible Tender Offer. If no Eligible Tender Offer is conducted, the Trust will dissolve on the Dissolution Date (subject to extension as described above), unless the limited term provisions of the Agreement and Declaration of Trust are amended with the vote of shareholders.

Following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, eliminate the Dissolution Date without shareholder approval and provide for the Trust's perpetual existence. In determining whether to eliminate the Dissolution Date, the Board may consider market conditions at such time and all other factors deemed relevant by the Board in consultation with the Advisor, taking into account that the Advisor may have a potential conflict of interest in recommending to the Board that the limited term structure be eliminated and the Trust have a perpetual existence. In making a decision to eliminate the Dissolution Date to provide for the Trust's perpetual existence, the Board will take such actions with respect to the continued operations of the Trust as it deems to be in the best interests of the Trust. The Trust is not required to conduct additional tender offers following an Eligible Tender Offer and conversion to a perpetual structure. Therefore, remaining common shareholders may not have another opportunity to participate in a tender offer or exchange their common shares for the then-existing NAV per share. There is no guarantee that the Board will eliminate the Dissolution Date following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer so that the Trust will have a perpetual existence.

All common shareholders remaining after a tender offer will be subject to proportionately higher expenses due to the reduction in the Trust's assets resulting from payment for the tendered common shares. A reduction in assets, and the corresponding increase in the Trust's expense ratio, could result in lower returns and put the Trust at a disadvantage relative to its peers and potentially cause the Trust's common shares to trade at a wider discount to NAV than it otherwise would. Such reduction in the Trust's assets may also result in less investment flexibility, reduced diversification and greater volatility for the Trust, and may have an adverse effect on the Trust's investment performance. Moreover, the resulting reduction in the number of outstanding common shares could cause the common

[Table of Contents](#)

shares to become more thinly traded or otherwise adversely impact the secondary market trading of such common shares.

The Board may, to the extent it deems appropriate and without shareholder approval, adopt a plan of liquidation at any time preceding the anticipated Dissolution Date, which plan of liquidation may set forth the terms and conditions for implementing the termination of the Trust's existence, including the commencement of the winding down of its investment operations and the making of one or more liquidating distributions to common shareholders prior to the Dissolution Date. The Trust retains broad flexibility to liquidate its portfolio, wind up its business and make liquidating distributions to common shareholders in a manner and on a schedule it believes will best contribute to the achievement of its investment objectives.

Following a liquidation of substantially all of its portfolio and the distribution of the net proceeds thereof to the shareholders, the Trust may continue in existence to pay, satisfy, and discharge any existing debts or obligations, collect and distribute any remaining net assets to the shareholders, and do all other acts required to liquidate and wind up its business and affairs. As soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, the Trust will complete the liquidation of its portfolio (to the extent possible and not already liquidated), retire or redeem its leverage facilities, if any (to the extent not already retired or redeemed), distribute all of its liquidated net assets to its common shareholders (to the extent not already distributed) and terminate its existence under Delaware law.

Although it is anticipated that the Trust will have distributed substantially all of its net assets to shareholders as soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, securities for which no market exists or securities trading at depressed prices, if any, may be placed in a liquidating trust. Securities placed in a liquidating trust may be held for an indefinite period of time, potentially several years or longer, until they can be sold or pay out all of their cash flows. During such time, the shareholders will continue to be exposed to the risks associated with the Trust and the value of their interest in the liquidating trust will fluctuate with the value of the liquidating trust's remaining assets. To the extent the costs associated with a liquidating trust exceed the value of the remaining securities, the liquidating trust trustees may determine to dispose of the remaining securities in a manner of their choosing. The Trust cannot predict the amount, if any, of securities that will be required to be placed in a liquidating trust or how long it will take to sell or otherwise dispose of such securities.

The Trust is not a so called “target date” or “life cycle” fund whose asset allocation becomes more conservative over time as its target date, often associated with retirement, approaches. In addition, the Trust is not a “target term” fund whose investment

[Table of Contents](#)

objective is to return its original NAV on the Dissolution Date or in an Eligible Tender Offer. The final distribution of net assets per common share upon dissolution or the price per common share in an Eligible Tender Offer may be more than, equal to or less than the initial public offering price per common share.

Investment Objectives

The Trust's investment objectives are to provide total return and income through a combination of current income, current gains and long-term capital appreciation. The Trust is not intended as, and you should not construe it to be, a complete investment program. There can be no assurance that the Trust's investment objectives will be achieved or that the Trust's investment program will be successful. The Trust's investment objectives may be changed by the Trust's Board without prior shareholder approval.

Investment Strategy

BlackRock Advisors, LLC will be the Trust's investment adviser.

The Advisor may consider a variety of factors when choosing investments for the Trust, but expects to select companies with the potential for rapid and sustainable growth from the development, advancement and use of science and/or technology.

In addition, a variety of countries, including emerging market countries, and industries are likely to be represented in the Trust's portfolio.

The Trust generally will sell a stock when, in the Advisor's opinion, the stock is fully valued, there is a need to rebalance the portfolio or there is a better opportunity elsewhere.

The Trust may engage in active and frequent trading of portfolio securities to seek to achieve its investment objectives.

Investment Policies

Under normal market conditions, the Trust will invest at least 80% of its total assets in equity securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. science and technology companies in any market capitalization range, selected for their rapid and sustainable growth potential from the development, advancement and use of science and/or technology.

Science and technology companies are companies whose products, processes or services, in the Advisor's view, are being, or are expected to be, significantly benefited by the use or commercial application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries. These companies include companies that, in the Advisor's view, derive a competitive advantage by the application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries to grow their business or increase their competitive advantage, as well as companies that utilize science and/or technology as an agent of change to significantly enhance their business opportunities.

Table of Contents

Science, technology and science- or technology-related companies may include companies operating in any industry, including, but not limited to software, internet software & services, IT services, hardware, communications equipment, semiconductors and semiconductor equipment, media, internet retail, consumer finance, life sciences tools & services, biotechnology, pharmaceuticals, energy, defense/aerospace, diversified telecom services and wireless telecom services. It is anticipated that the Trust's investments will be focused on companies within such industries that the Advisor expects will generate a majority of their revenues from the development, advancement, use or sale of new and emerging, or "next generation," science- or technology-related products, processes or services. There is no assurance, however, that any of the Trust's assets will be invested in such companies at any time. The Advisor determines, in its discretion, whether a company is a science, technology or science- or technology-related company.

The Trust may invest in companies of any market capitalization located anywhere in the world, including companies located in emerging markets. Equity securities in which the Trust may invest include common stocks, preferred stocks, convertible securities, warrants, depositary receipts, exchange-traded funds and equity interests in real estate investment trusts ("REITs") and master limited partnerships ("MLPs"). The Trust may invest in shares of companies through initial public offerings ("IPOs"). The Trust may also invest, without limit, in privately placed or restricted securities (including in Rule 144A securities, which are privately placed securities purchased by qualified institutional buyers), illiquid securities and securities in which no secondary market is readily available, including those of private companies. Issuers of these securities may not have a class of securities registered, and may not be subject to periodic reporting, pursuant to the Exchange Act. Under normal market conditions, the Trust currently intends to invest up to 25% of its total assets, measured at the time of investment, in such securities. The Trust expects certain of such investments to be in "pre-IPO securities," which are securities of new and early stage companies, often funded by venture capital, whose securities have not been offered to the public and are not publicly traded. Foreign securities in which the Trust may invest may be U.S. dollar-denominated or non-U.S. dollar-denominated.

The Trust may also invest in securities of other open- or closed-end investment companies, including exchange-traded funds ("ETFs") and business development companies ("BDCs"), subject to applicable regulatory limits, that invest primarily in securities of the types in which the Trust may invest directly. The Trust classifies its investments in such investment companies as "equity securities" for purposes of its investment policies based upon such investment companies' stated investment objectives, policies and restrictions.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Trust will concentrate its investments in companies operating in one or more industries within the technology group of industries. See “Investment Objectives and Policies—Investment Restrictions—Fundamental Investment Restrictions” and “—Notations Regarding the Trust’s Fundamental Investment Restrictions” in the SAI for additional information regarding the Trust’s concentration policy.

The Trust may invest up to 20% of its total assets in equity securities issued by companies that are not science or technology companies and in debt securities issued by any issuer, including non-investment grade debt securities. The Trust’s investments in non-investment grade securities and those deemed to be of similar quality are considered speculative with respect to the issuer’s capacity to pay interest and repay principal and are commonly referred to as “junk” or “high yield” securities.

Options Writing Strategy. As part of its investment strategy, the Trust intends to employ a strategy of writing (selling) covered call options on a portion of the common stocks in its portfolio, writing (selling) other call and put options on individual common stocks, and, to a lesser extent, writing (selling) call and put options on indices of securities and sectors of securities (collectively referred to as “index options”). This options writing strategy is intended to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust’s risk-adjusted returns. A substantial portion of the options written by the Trust may be over-the-counter options (“OTC options”).

A call option written by the Trust on a security is considered a covered call option where the Trust owns the security underlying the call option. Unlike a written covered call option, other written options will not provide the Trust with any potential appreciation on an underlying security to offset any loss the Trust may experience if the option is exercised. Over time, as the Trust writes covered call options over more of its portfolio, its ability to benefit from capital appreciation on the underlying securities may become more limited, and the Trust will lose money to the extent that it writes covered call options and the securities on which it writes these options appreciate above the exercise price of the option. Therefore, over time, the Advisor may choose to decrease its use of a covered call options writing strategy to the extent that it may negatively impact the Trust’s ability to benefit from capital appreciation.

For any written call option where the Trust does not own the underlying security, the Trust may have an absolute and immediate right to acquire that security upon conversion or exchange of other securities held by the Trust without additional cash consideration (or, if additional cash consideration is required, cash or liquid securities in such amount are segregated on the Trust’s books) or the Trust may hold a call on the same security where the exercise price of the call held is (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written, or

[Table of Contents](#)

(ii) greater than the exercise price of the call written, provided cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the difference is segregated on the Trust's books.

When writing a put option on a security, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the option exercise price or the Trust may hold a put option on the same security as the put written where the exercise price of the put held is (i) equal to or greater than the exercise price of the put written, or (ii) less than the exercise price of the put written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust's books.

When writing an index put option, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the exercise price, or the Trust may hold a put on the same basket of securities as the put written where the exercise price of the put held is (i) equal to or more than the exercise price of the put written, or (ii) less than the exercise price of the put written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust's books. When writing an index call option, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the excess of the value of the applicable basket of securities over the exercise price, or the Trust may hold a call on the same basket of securities as the call written where the exercise price of the call held is (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written, or (ii) greater than the exercise price of the call written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust's books.

The Trust may write put and call options, the notional amount of which would be approximately 10% to 40% of the Trust's total assets, although this percentage may vary from time to time with market conditions. Under current market conditions, the Trust anticipates initially writing put and call options, the notional amount of which would be approximately 25% of the Trust's total assets. The Trust generally writes options that are "out of the money"—in other words, the strike price of a written call option will be greater than the market price of the underlying security on the date that the option is written, or, for a written put option, less than the market price of the underlying security on the date that the option is written; however, the Trust may also write "in the money" options for defensive or other purposes. The number of put and call options on securities the Trust can write is limited by the total assets the Trust holds, and further limited by the fact that all options represent 100 share lots of the underlying common stock.

The Trust's exchange-listed options transactions will be subject to limitations established by each of the exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities on which such options are traded. These

[Table of Contents](#)

limitations govern the maximum number of options in each class that may be written or purchased by a single investor or group of investors acting in concert, regardless of whether the options are written or purchased on the same or different exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities or are held or written in one or more accounts or through one or more brokers. Thus, the number of options which the Trust may write or purchase may be affected by options written or purchased by other investment advisory clients of the Advisor. An exchange, board of trade or other trading facility may order the liquidation of positions found to be in excess of these limits, and it may impose certain other sanctions.

Other Strategies. During temporary defensive periods (i.e., in response to adverse market, economic or political conditions), the Trust may invest up to 100% of its total assets in liquid, short-term investments, including high quality, short-term securities. The Trust may not achieve its investment objectives under these circumstances.

The Trust may invest in structured instruments (such as equity-linked notes (“ELNs”)) for investment purposes, as an alternative or complement to its options writing strategy or for risk management or leveraging purposes.

The Trust may purchase and sell futures contracts, enter into various interest rate transactions such as swaps, caps, floors or collars, currency transactions such as currency forward contracts, currency futures contracts, currency swaps or options on currency or currency futures and swap contracts (including, but not limited to, credit default swaps) and may purchase and sell exchange-listed and over-the-counter (“OTC”) put and call options on securities and swap contracts, financial indices and futures contracts and use other derivative instruments or management techniques (collectively, “Strategic Transactions”). The Trust may engage in Strategic Transactions for duration management and other risk management purposes, including to attempt to protect against possible changes in the market value of the Trust’s portfolio resulting from trends in the securities markets and changes in interest rates or to protect the Trust’s unrealized gains in the value of its portfolio securities, to facilitate the sale of portfolio securities for investment purposes, to establish a position in the securities markets as a temporary substitute for purchasing particular securities or to enhance income or gain. See “The Trust’s Investments—Portfolio Contents and Techniques—Strategic Transactions and Other Management Techniques.”

The Trust may lend securities with a value of up to 33 1/3% of its total assets (including such loans) to financial institutions that provide cash or securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government as collateral.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Trust may also engage in short sales of securities. See “The Trust’s Investments—Investment Objectives and Policies—Investment Policies” in this prospectus for information about the limitations applicable to the Trust’s short sale activities.

The Trust may engage in active and frequent trading of portfolio securities to achieve its investment objectives.

Unless otherwise stated herein or in the SAI, the Trust’s investment policies are non-fundamental policies and may be changed by the Board without prior shareholder approval. The Trust’s policy to invest at least 80% of its total assets in equity securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. science and technology companies in any market capitalization range may be changed by the Board; however, if this policy changes, the Trust will provide shareholders at least 60 days’ written notice before implementation of the change in compliance with U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”) rules.

For a discussion of risk factors that may affect the Trust’s ability to achieve its investment objectives, see “Risks.”

Leverage

The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares. The Trust is, however, permitted to borrow money or issue debt securities in an amount up to 33 1/3% of its Managed Assets (50% of its net assets), and issue preferred shares in an amount up to 50% of its Managed Assets (100% of its net assets). “Managed Assets” means the total assets of the Trust (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes) minus the sum of the Trust’s accrued liabilities (other than money borrowed for investment purposes). Although it has no present intention to do so, the Trust reserves the right to borrow money from banks or other financial institutions, or issue debt securities or preferred shares, in the future if it believes that market conditions would be conducive to the successful implementation of a leveraging strategy through borrowing money or issuing debt securities or preferred shares. See “Leverage.”

The use of leverage, if employed, is subject to numerous risks. When leverage is employed, the Trust’s NAV, the market price of the common shares and the yield to holders of common shares will be more volatile than if leverage were not used. For example, a rise in short-term interest rates, which currently are near historically low levels, generally will cause the Trust’s NAV to decline more than if the Trust had not used leverage. A reduction in the Trust’s NAV may cause a reduction in the market price of the Trust’s common shares. The Trust cannot assure you that the use of leverage will result in a higher yield on the Trust’s common shares. When the Trust uses leverage, the management fee payable to the Advisor will be higher than if the Trust did not use leverage because this fee is calculated on the basis of the Trust’s Managed Assets, which include the proceeds

[Table of Contents](#)

of leverage. Any leveraging strategy the Trust employs may not be successful. See “Risks—Leverage Risk.”

Investment Advisor

BlackRock Advisors, LLC will be the Trust’s investment adviser. The Advisor will receive an annual fee, payable monthly, in an amount equal to 1.25% of the average daily value of the Trust’s Managed Assets. See “Management of the Trust—Investment Advisor.”

Distributions

Commencing with the Trust’s initial dividend, the Trust intends to distribute monthly all or a portion of its net investment income, including current gains, to holders of common shares. We expect to declare the initial monthly dividend on the Trust’s common shares approximately 45 days after completion of this offering and to pay that initial monthly dividend approximately 60 to 90 days after completion of this offering, depending on market conditions.

The Trust has, pursuant to an SEC exemptive order granted to certain of BlackRock’s closed-end funds, adopted a plan to support a level distribution of income, capital gains and/or return of capital (the “Level Distribution Plan”). The Level Distribution Plan has been approved by the Board and is consistent with the Trust’s investment objectives and policies. Under the Level Distribution Plan, the Trust will distribute all available investment income, including current gains, to its shareholders, consistent with its investment objectives and as required by the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”). If sufficient investment income, including current gains, is not available on a monthly basis, the Trust will distribute long-term capital gains and/or return of capital to shareholders in order to maintain a level distribution. A return of capital distribution may involve a return of the shareholder’s original investment. Though not currently taxable, such a distribution may lower a shareholder’s basis in the Trust, thus potentially subjecting the shareholder to future tax consequences in connection with the sale of Trust shares, even if sold at a loss to the shareholder’s original investment. All or a significant portion of the Trust’s distributions to shareholders during the Trust’s first year of operations may consist of return of capital. Each monthly distribution to shareholders is expected to be at a fixed amount established by the Board, except for extraordinary distributions and potential distribution rate increases or decreases to enable the Trust to comply with the distribution requirements imposed by the Code. Shareholders should not draw any conclusions about the Trust’s investment performance from the amount of these distributions or from the terms of the Level Distribution Plan.

Various factors will affect the level of the Trust’s income, including the asset mix and the Trust’s use of options and hedging. To permit the Trust to maintain a more stable monthly distribution, the Trust may from time to time distribute less than the entire amount of income earned in a particular period. The undistributed income would be available to supplement future distributions. As a result, the

[Table of Contents](#)

distributions paid by the Trust for any particular monthly period may be more or less than the amount of income actually earned by the Trust during that period. Undistributed income will add to the Trust's NAV (and indirectly benefits the Advisor by increasing its fee) and, correspondingly, distributions from undistributed income will reduce the Trust's NAV. The Trust intends to distribute any long-term capital gains not distributed under the Level Distribution Plan annually.

Shareholders will automatically have all dividends and distributions reinvested in common shares of the Trust in accordance with the Trust's dividend reinvestment plan, unless an election is made to receive cash by contacting the Reinvestment Plan Agent (as defined herein), at [\(800\) 699-1236](#). See "Dividend Reinvestment Plan."

Under normal market conditions, the Advisor will seek to manage the Trust in a manner such that the Trust's distributions are reflective of the Trust's current and projected earnings levels. The distribution level of the Trust is subject to change based upon a number of factors, including the current and projected level of the Trust's earnings, and may fluctuate over time.

The Trust reserves the right to change its distribution policy and the basis for establishing the rate of its monthly distributions at any time and may do so without prior notice to common shareholders. See "Distributions."

Listing

The Trust's common shares have been approved for listing on the New York Stock Exchange ("NYSE"), subject to notice of issuance, under the symbol "BSTZ." See "Description of Shares—Common Shares."

Custodian and Transfer Agent

State Street Bank and Trust Company will serve as the Trust's custodian, and Computershare Trust Company, N.A. will serve as the Trust's transfer agent.

Administrator

State Street Bank and Trust Company will serve as the Trust's administrator and fund accountant.

Market Price of Shares

Common shares of closed-end investment companies frequently trade at prices lower than their NAV. The Trust cannot assure you that its common shares will trade at a price higher than or equal to NAV. See "Use of Proceeds." The Trust's common shares will trade in the open market at market prices that will be a function of several factors, including dividend levels (which are in turn affected by expenses), NAV, call protection for portfolio securities, portfolio credit quality, liquidity, dividend stability, relative demand for and supply of the common shares in the market, general market and economic conditions and other factors. See "Leverage," "Risks," "Description of Shares" and "Repurchase of Common Shares." The common

[Table of Contents](#)

Special Risk Considerations

shares are designed primarily for long-term investors and you should not purchase common shares of the Trust if you intend to sell them shortly after purchase.

An investment in common shares of the Trust involves risk. You should consider carefully the risks discussed below, which are described in more detail under “Risks” beginning on page 69 of this prospectus.

No Operating History. The Trust is a newly organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company with no operating history. The Trust does not have any historical financial statements or other meaningful operating or financial data on which potential investors may evaluate the Trust and its performance. See “Risks—No Operating History.”

Limited Term Risk. Unless the limited term provision of the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust is amended by shareholders in accordance with the Agreement and Declaration of Trust, or unless the Trust completes an Eligible Tender Offer and converts to perpetual existence, the Trust will dissolve on or about the Dissolution Date. **The Trust is not a so called “target date” or “life cycle” fund whose asset allocation becomes more conservative over time as its target date, often associated with retirement, approaches. In addition, the Trust is not a “target term” fund and thus does not seek to return its initial public offering price per common share upon dissolution.** As the assets of the Trust will be liquidated in connection with its dissolution, the Trust may be required to sell portfolio securities when it otherwise would not, including at times when market conditions are not favorable, which may cause the Trust to lose money. In addition, as the Trust approaches the Dissolution Date, the Advisor may invest the proceeds of sold, matured or called securities in money market mutual funds, cash, cash equivalents, securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government or its instrumentalities or agencies, high quality, short-term money market instruments, short-term debt securities, certificates of deposit, bankers’ acceptances and other bank obligations, commercial paper or other liquid debt securities, which may adversely affect the Trust’s investment performance. Rather than reinvesting proceeds received from sales of or payments received in respect of portfolio securities, the Trust may distribute such proceeds in one or more liquidating distributions prior to the final dissolution, which may cause the Trust’s fixed expenses to increase when expressed as a percentage of net assets attributable to common shares, or the Trust may invest the proceeds in lower yielding securities or hold the proceeds in cash or cash equivalents, which may adversely affect the performance of the Trust. The final distribution of net assets upon dissolution may be more than, equal to or less than \$20.00 per common share. Because the Trust may adopt a plan of liquidation and make liquidating distributions in advance of the Dissolution Date, the

[Table of Contents](#)

total value of the Trust's assets returned to common shareholders upon dissolution will be impacted by decisions of the Board and the Advisor regarding the timing of adopting a plan of liquidation and making liquidating distributions. This may result in common shareholders receiving liquidating distributions with a value more or less than the value that would have been received if the Trust had liquidated all of its assets on the Dissolution Date, or any other potential date for liquidation referenced in this prospectus, and distributed the proceeds thereof to shareholders.

If the Trust conducts an Eligible Tender Offer, the Trust anticipates that funds to pay the aggregate purchase price of shares accepted for purchase pursuant to the tender offer will be first derived from any cash on hand and then from the proceeds from the sale of portfolio investments held by the Trust. The risks related to the disposition of securities in connection with the Trust's dissolution also would be present in connection with the disposition of securities in connection with an Eligible Tender Offer. It is likely that during the pendency of a tender offer, and possibly for a time thereafter, the Trust will hold a greater than normal percentage of its total assets in cash and cash equivalents, which may impede the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives and decrease returns to shareholders. The tax effect of any such dispositions of portfolio investments will depend on the difference between the price at which the investments are sold and the tax basis of the Trust in the investments. Any capital gains recognized on such dispositions, as reduced by any capital losses the Trust realizes in the year of such dispositions and by any available capital loss carryforwards, will be distributed to shareholders as capital gain dividends (to the extent of net long-term capital gains over net short-term capital losses) or ordinary dividends (to the extent of net short-term capital gains over net long-term capital losses) during or with respect to such year, and such distributions will generally be taxable to common shareholders. If the Trust's tax basis for the investments sold is less than the sale proceeds, the Trust will recognize capital gains, which the Trust will be required to distribute to common shareholders. In addition, the Trust's purchase of tendered common shares pursuant to an Eligible Tender Offer will have tax consequences for tendering common shareholders and may have tax consequences for non-tendering common shareholders. See "Tax Matters" below.

The purchase of common shares by the Trust pursuant to an Eligible Tender Offer will have the effect of increasing the proportionate interest in the Trust of non-tendering common shareholders. All common shareholders remaining after an Eligible Tender Offer will be subject to any increased risks associated with the reduction in the Trust's assets resulting from payment for the tendered common shares, such as greater volatility due to decreased diversification and proportionately higher expenses. The reduced assets of the Trust as a result of an Eligible Tender Offer may result in less investment

[Table of Contents](#)

flexibility for the Trust and may have an adverse effect on the Trust's investment performance. Such reduction in the Trust's assets may also cause common shares of the Trust to become thinly traded or otherwise negatively impact secondary trading of common shares. A reduction in assets, and the corresponding increase in the Trust's expense ratio, could result in lower returns and put the Trust at a disadvantage relative to its peers and potentially cause the Trust's common shares to trade at a wider discount to NAV than they otherwise would. Furthermore, the portfolio of the Trust following an Eligible Tender Offer could be significantly different and, therefore, common shareholders retaining an investment in the Trust could be subject to greater risk. For example, the Trust may be required to sell its more liquid, higher quality portfolio investments to purchase common shares that are tendered in an Eligible Tender Offer, which would leave a less liquid, lower quality portfolio for remaining shareholders. The prospects of an Eligible Tender Offer may attract arbitrageurs who would purchase the common shares prior to the tender offer for the sole purpose of tendering those shares which could have the effect of exacerbating the risks described herein for shareholders retaining an investment in the Trust following an Eligible Tender Offer.

The Trust is not required to conduct an Eligible Tender Offer. If the Trust conducts an Eligible Tender Offer, there can be no assurance that the payment for tendered common shares would not result in the Trust having aggregate net assets below the Dissolution Threshold, in which case the Eligible Tender Offer will be canceled, no common shares will be repurchased pursuant to the Eligible Tender Offer and the Trust will liquidate on the Dissolution Date (subject to possible extensions). Following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer in which the payment for tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets greater than or equal to the Dissolution Threshold, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, eliminate the Dissolution Date without shareholder approval and provide for the Trust's perpetual existence. Thereafter, the Trust will have a perpetual existence. There is no guarantee that the Board will eliminate the Dissolution Date following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer so that the Trust will have a perpetual existence. The Advisor may have a conflict of interest in recommending to the Board that the Dissolution Date be eliminated and the Trust have a perpetual existence. The Trust is not required to conduct additional tender offers following an Eligible Tender Offer and conversion to perpetual existence. Therefore, remaining common shareholders may not have another opportunity to participate in a tender offer. Shares of closed-end management investment companies frequently trade at a discount from their NAV, and as a result remaining common shareholders may only be able to sell their shares at a discount to NAV.

[Table of Contents](#)

Although it is anticipated that the Trust will have distributed substantially all of its net assets to shareholders as soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, securities for which no market exists or securities trading at depressed prices, if any, may be placed in a liquidating trust. Securities placed in a liquidating trust may be held for an indefinite period of time, potentially several years or longer, until they can be sold or pay out all of their cash flows. During such time, the shareholders will continue to be exposed to the risks associated with the Trust and the value of their interest in the liquidating trust will fluctuate with the value of the liquidating trust's remaining assets. Additionally, the tax treatment of the liquidating trust's assets may differ from the tax treatment applicable to such assets when held by the Trust. To the extent the costs associated with a liquidating trust exceed the value of the remaining securities, the liquidating trust trustees may determine to dispose of the remaining securities in a manner of their choosing. The Trust cannot predict the amount, if any, of securities that will be required to be placed in a liquidating trust or how long it will take to sell or otherwise dispose of such securities.

Non-Diversified Status. The Trust is a non-diversified fund. As defined in the Investment Company Act, a non-diversified fund may have a significant part of its investments in a smaller number of issuers than can a diversified fund. Having a larger percentage of assets in a smaller number of issuers makes a non-diversified fund, like the Trust, more susceptible to the risk that one single event or occurrence can have a significant adverse impact upon the Trust.

Investment and Market Discount Risk. An investment in the Trust's common shares is subject to investment risk, including the possible loss of the entire amount that you invest. As with any stock, the price of the Trust's common shares will fluctuate with market conditions and other factors. If shares are sold, the price received may be more or less than the original investment. Common shares are designed for long-term investors and the Trust should not be treated as a trading vehicle. Shares of closed-end management investment companies frequently trade at a discount from their NAV. This risk is separate and distinct from the risk that the Trust's NAV could decrease as a result of its investment activities. At any point in time an investment in the Trust's common shares may be worth less than the original amount invested, even after taking into account distributions paid by the Trust. This risk may be greater for investors who sell their common shares in a relatively short period of time after completion of the initial offering. During periods in which the Trust may use leverage, the Trust's investment, market discount and certain other risks will be magnified.

Science and Technology Risk. The Trust's investment policies, including its fundamental policy of concentrating its investments in companies operating in one or more industries within the technology

[Table of Contents](#)

group of industries, and investment focus may subject it to more risks than funds that are more broadly diversified over companies with differing characteristics and operating in numerous sectors of the economy. General changes in market sentiment towards science and technology companies may adversely affect the Trust, and the performance of science and technology companies may lag behind the broader market as a whole. Also, the Trust's investments may subject it to a variety of risks, including the following, which may cause the value of the common shares of the Trust to fluctuate significantly over relatively short periods of time:

Technology Company Risk. The market prices of technology and technology-related stocks tend to exhibit a greater degree of market risk and price volatility than other types of investments. These stocks may fall in and out of favor with investors rapidly, which may cause sudden selling and dramatically lower market prices. These stocks also may be affected adversely by changes in technology, consumer and business purchasing patterns, short product cycles, falling prices and profits, government regulation, lack of standardization or compatibility with existing technologies, intense competition, aggressive pricing, dependence on copyright and/or patent protection and/or obsolete products or services. See "Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Technology Company Risk."

Telecommunications Company Risk. Telecommunications companies can be adversely affected by, among other things, changes in government regulation, intense competition, dependency on patent protection, significant capital expenditures, heavy debt burdens and rapid obsolescence of products and services due to product compatibility or changing consumer preferences. See "Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Telecommunications Company Risk."

Life Sciences Industries Risk. Life sciences industries are characterized by limited product focus, rapidly changing technology and extensive government regulation. In particular, technological advances can render an existing product, which may account for a disproportionate share of a company's revenue, obsolete. Obtaining governmental approval from agencies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration ("FDA"), the U.S. Department of Agriculture and other governmental agencies for new products can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain as to outcome. Any delays in product development may result in the need to seek additional capital, potentially diluting the interests of existing investors such as the Trust. In addition, governmental agencies may, for a variety of reasons, restrict the release of certain innovative technologies of commercial significance, such as genetically altered material. These various factors may result in abrupt advances and declines in the securities prices of particular companies and, in some cases, may have a broad effect on the prices of securities of companies in particular life sciences industries.

Table of Contents

Intense competition exists within and among certain life sciences industries, including competition to obtain and sustain proprietary technology protection. Life sciences companies can be highly dependent on the strength of patents, trademarks and other intellectual property rights for maintenance of profit margins and market share. The complex nature of the technologies involved can lead to patent disputes, including litigation that may be costly and that could result in a company losing an exclusive right to a patent. Competitors of life sciences companies may have substantially greater financial resources, more extensive development, manufacturing, marketing and service capabilities, and a larger number of qualified managerial and technical personnel. Such competitors may succeed in developing technologies and products that are more effective or less costly than any that may be developed by life sciences companies in which the Trust invests and may also prove to be more successful in production and marketing. Competition may increase further as a result of potential advances in health services and medical technology and greater availability of capital for investment in these fields.

With respect to healthcare, cost containment measures already implemented by the federal government, state governments and the private sector have adversely affected certain sectors of these industries. If not repealed, the implementation of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act may create increased demand for healthcare products and services but also may have an adverse effect on some companies in the health sciences industry. Increased emphasis on managed care in the United States may put pressure on the price and usage of products sold by life sciences companies in which the Trust may invest and may adversely affect the sales and revenues of life sciences companies.

Product development efforts by life sciences companies may not result in commercial products for many reasons, including, but not limited to, failure to achieve acceptable clinical trial results, limited effectiveness in treating the specified condition or illness, harmful side effects, failure to obtain regulatory approval, and high manufacturing costs. Even after a product is commercially released, governmental agencies may require additional clinical trials or change the labeling requirements for products if additional product side effects are identified, which could have a material adverse effect on the market price of the securities of those life sciences companies.

Certain life sciences companies in which the Trust may invest may be exposed to potential product liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of pharmaceuticals, medical devices or other products. There can be no assurances that a product liability claim would not have a material adverse effect on the business, financial condition or securities prices of a company in which the Trust has invested.

[Table of Contents](#)

Biotechnology and Pharmaceutical Company Risk. The success of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies is highly dependent on the development, procurement and/or marketing of drugs. The values of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies are also dependent on the development, protection and exploitation of intellectual property rights and other proprietary information, and the profitability of biotechnology and pharmaceutical companies may be significantly affected by such things as the expiration of patents or the loss of, or the inability to enforce, intellectual property rights. See “Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Biotechnology Company Risk” and “—Pharmaceutical Company Risk.”

Industrial Products, Services and Equipment Company Risk. Industrial products, services and equipment companies can be significantly affected by general economic trends, changes in consumer sentiment and spending, commodity prices, technological obsolescence, labor relations, legislation, government regulations and spending, import controls, and worldwide competition, and can be subject to liability for environmental damage, depletion of resources, and mandated expenditures for safety and pollution control. See “Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Industrial Products, Services and Equipment Company Risk.”

Media Company Risk. Companies engaged in the design, production or distribution of goods or services for the media industry may become obsolete quickly. Media companies are subject to risks that include cyclicity of revenues and earnings, a decrease in the discretionary income of targeted individuals, changing consumer tastes and interests, fierce competition in the industry and the potential for increased government regulation. Competitive pressures and government regulation can significantly affect media companies. Additionally, intellectual property rights are very important to many media companies and the expiration of intellectual property rights or other events that adversely affect a media company’s intellectual property rights may materially and adversely affect the value of its securities. See “Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Media Company Risk.”

Consumer Finance Company Risk. Consumer finance companies can be significantly affected by changing economic conditions, demand for consumer loans, refinancing activity and intense competition. Profitability can be largely dependent on the availability and cost of capital and the rate of consumer debt defaults, and can fluctuate significantly when interest rates change. Profitability can in particular be adversely impacted during periods of rising interest rates. Consumer finance companies are subject to extensive government regulation, which can change frequently and may adversely affect the scope of their activities, the prices they can charge and the amount of

[Table of Contents](#)

capital they must maintain, or may affect them in other ways that are unforeseeable. See “Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Consumer Finance Company Risk.”

Energy Company Risk. Energy and natural resources companies are especially affected by variations in the commodities markets and these companies may lack the resources and the broad business lines to weather hard times. Energy companies can be significantly affected by the supply of and demand for specific products and services, the supply of and demand for oil and gas, the price of oil and gas, exploration and production spending, research and development costs related to new technologies, the success or failure of efforts to develop or implement new or existing technologies, government regulation (including environmental regulation), world events and economic conditions, the cyclical nature of the energy sector, weather patterns and extreme weather conditions, intense competition, events relating to domestic and international political developments, energy conservation, environmental costs and liabilities, the success of exploration projects, catastrophes and terrorism, commodity prices, and tax regulations. See “Risks—Science and Technology Risk—Energy Company Risk.”

Defense/Aerospace Company Risk. The principal risks facing defense/aerospace companies include the fact that procurement cycles can be as long as ten years and that the rate of growth in defense spending may slow down. Defense/aerospace companies may be adversely affected by, among other things, their exposure to aircraft and automobile manufacturing, underfunded pensions, reductions in domestic and international defense spending and budgets and reduced export opportunities as a result of such reduced budgets and spending. Moreover, changing economic conditions, government regulation, intense competition, dependence on patent protection and government contracts, various legislative initiatives and changing political landscapes and national and international priorities, among other things, may affect the profitability of defense/aerospace companies.

Equity Securities Risk. Stock markets are volatile, and the prices of equity securities fluctuate based on changes in a company’s financial condition and overall market and economic conditions. Although common stocks have historically generated higher average total returns than fixed-income securities over the long-term, common stocks also have experienced significantly more volatility in those returns and, in certain periods, have significantly underperformed relative to fixed-income securities. An adverse event, such as an unfavorable earnings report, may depress the value of a particular common stock held by the Trust. A common stock may also decline due to factors which affect a particular industry or industries, such as labor shortages or increased production costs and competitive conditions within an industry. The value of a particular common stock held by the Trust may decline for a number of other reasons which

[Table of Contents](#)

directly relate to the issuer, such as management performance, financial leverage, the issuer's historical and prospective earnings, the value of its assets and reduced demand for its goods and services. Also, the prices of common stocks are sensitive to general movements in the stock market and a drop in the stock market may depress the price of common stocks to which the Trust has exposure. Common stock prices fluctuate for several reasons, including changes in investors' perceptions of the financial condition of an issuer or the general condition of the relevant stock market, or when political or economic events affecting the issuers occur. In addition, common stock prices may be particularly sensitive to rising interest rates, as the cost of capital rises and borrowing costs increase. Common equity securities in which the Trust may invest are structurally subordinated to preferred stock, bonds and other debt instruments in a company's capital structure in terms of priority to corporate income and are therefore inherently more risky than preferred stock or debt instruments of such issuers.

Investments in American Depositary Receipts ("ADRs"), European Depositary Receipts ("EDRs"), Global Depositary Receipts ("GDRs") and other similar global instruments are generally subject to risks associated with equity securities and investments in non-U.S. securities. Unsponsored ADR, EDR and GDR programs are organized independently and without the cooperation of the issuer of the underlying securities. As a result, available information concerning the issuer may not be as current as for sponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs, and the prices of unsponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs may be more volatile than if such instruments were sponsored by the issuer.

Dividend Paying Equity Securities Risk. Dividends on common equity securities that the Trust may hold are not fixed but are declared at the discretion of an issuer's board of directors. Companies that have historically paid dividends on their securities are not required to continue to pay dividends on such securities. There is no guarantee that the issuers of the common equity securities in which the Trust invests will declare dividends in the future or that, if declared, they will remain at current levels or increase over time. Therefore, there is the possibility that such companies could reduce or eliminate the payment of dividends in the future. Dividend producing equity securities, in particular those whose market price is closely related to their yield, may exhibit greater sensitivity to interest rate changes. See "Risks—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Interest Rate Risk." The Trust's investments in dividend producing equity securities may also limit its potential for appreciation during a broad market advance.

The prices of dividend producing equity securities can be highly volatile. Investors should not assume that the Trust's investments in these securities will necessarily reduce the volatility of the Trust's NAV or provide "protection," compared to other types of equity securities, when markets perform poorly.

Smaller Capitalization Company Risk. Smaller capitalization companies may have limited product lines or markets. They may be less financially secure than larger, more established companies. They may depend on a small number of key personnel. If a product fails or there are other adverse developments, or if management changes, the Trust's investment in a smaller capitalization company may lose substantial value. In addition, it is more difficult to get information on smaller companies, which tend to be less well known, have shorter operating histories, do not have significant ownership by large investors and are followed by relatively few securities analysts.

The securities of smaller capitalization companies generally trade in lower volumes and are subject to greater and more unpredictable price changes than larger capitalization securities or the market as a whole. In addition, smaller capitalization securities may be particularly sensitive to changes in interest rates, borrowing costs and earnings. Investing in smaller capitalization securities requires a longer term view. See "Risks—Smaller Capitalization Company Risk."

Risks Associated with Private Company Investments. Private companies are generally not subject to SEC reporting requirements, are not required to maintain their accounting records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and are not required to maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting. As a result, the Advisor may not have timely or accurate information about the business, financial condition and results of operations of the private companies in which the Trust invests. There is risk that the Trust may invest on the basis of incomplete or inaccurate information, which may adversely affect the Trust's investment performance. Private companies in which the Trust may invest may have limited financial resources, shorter operating histories, more asset concentration risk, narrower product lines and smaller market shares than larger businesses, which tend to render such private companies more vulnerable to competitors' actions and market conditions, as well as general economic downturns. These companies generally have less predictable operating results, may from time to time be parties to litigation, may be engaged in rapidly changing businesses with products subject to a substantial risk of obsolescence, and may require substantial additional capital to support their operations, finance expansion or maintain their competitive position. These companies may have difficulty accessing the capital markets to meet future capital needs, which may limit their ability to grow or to repay their outstanding indebtedness upon maturity. In addition, the Trust's investment also may be structured as pay-in-kind securities with minimal or no cash interest or dividends until the company meets certain growth and liquidity objectives. See "Risks—Risks Associated with Private Company Investments."

Typically, investments in private companies are in restricted securities that are not traded in public markets and subject to substantial holding periods, so that the Trust may not be able to resell some of its holdings for extended periods, which may be several years. There can be no assurance that the Trust will be able to realize the value of private company investments in a timely manner. See “Risks—Risks Associated with Private Company Investments—Private Company Illiquidity Risk.”

Pre-IPO Securities Risk. Investments in pre-IPO securities involve greater risks than investments in shares of companies that have traded publicly on an exchange for extended periods of time. These investments may present significant opportunities for capital appreciation but involve a high degree of risk that may result in significant decreases in the value of these investments. Issuers of pre-IPO securities may not have established products, experienced management or earnings history. The Trust may not be able to sell such investments when the Advisor deems it appropriate to do so because they are not publicly traded. As such, these investments are generally considered to be illiquid until a company’s public offering (which may never occur) and are often subject to additional contractual restrictions on resale following any public offering that may prevent the Trust from selling its shares of these companies for a period of time. See “Risks—Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk.” Market conditions, developments within a company, investor perception or regulatory decisions may adversely affect an issuer of pre-IPO securities and delay or prevent such an issuer from ultimately offering its securities to the public. If a company does issue shares in an IPO, IPOs are risky and volatile and may cause the value of the Trust’s investment to decrease significantly.

Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk. The Trust may invest without limitation in illiquid or less liquid investments or investments in which no secondary market is readily available or which are otherwise illiquid, including private placement securities. The Trust may not be able to readily dispose of such investments at prices that approximate those at which the Trust could sell such investments if they were more widely traded and, as a result of such illiquidity, the Trust may have to sell other investments or engage in borrowing transactions if necessary to raise cash to meet its obligations. Limited liquidity can also affect the market price of investments, thereby adversely affecting the Trust’s NAV and ability to make dividend distributions. The financial markets in general, and certain segments of the mortgage-related securities markets in particular, have in recent years experienced periods of extreme secondary market supply and demand imbalance, resulting in a loss of liquidity during which market prices were suddenly and substantially below traditional measures of intrinsic value. During such periods, some investments could be sold only at arbitrary prices and with substantial losses. Periods of such market dislocation may occur again at any time.

[Table of Contents](#)

Privately issued debt securities are often of below investment grade quality, frequently are unrated and present many of the same risks as investing in below investment grade public debt securities. See “Risks—Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk.”

Valuation Risk. The Trust is subject to valuation risk, which is the risk that one or more of the securities in which the Trust invests are valued at prices that the Trust is unable to obtain upon sale due to factors such as incomplete data, market instability or human error. The Advisor may use an independent pricing service or prices provided by dealers to value securities at their market value. Because the secondary markets for certain investments may be limited, such instruments may be difficult to value. See “Net Asset Value.” When market quotations are not available, the Advisor may price such investments pursuant to a number of methodologies, such as computer-based analytical modeling or individual security evaluations. These methodologies generate approximations of market values, and there may be significant professional disagreement about the best methodology for a particular type of financial instrument or different methodologies that might be used under different circumstances. In the absence of an actual market transaction, reliance on such methodologies is essential, but may introduce significant variances in the ultimate valuation of the Trust’s investments. Technological issues and/or errors by pricing services or other third-party service providers may also impact the Trust’s ability to value its investments and the calculation of the Trust’s NAV.

When market quotations are not readily available or are deemed to be inaccurate or unreliable, the Trust values its investments at fair value as determined in good faith pursuant to policies and procedures approved by the Board. Fair value is defined as the amount for which assets could be sold in an orderly disposition over a reasonable period of time, taking into account the nature of the asset. Fair value pricing may require determinations that are inherently subjective and inexact about the value of a security or other asset. As a result, there can be no assurance that fair value priced assets will not result in future adjustments to the prices of securities or other assets, or that fair value pricing will reflect a price that the Trust is able to obtain upon sale, and it is possible that the fair value determined for a security or other asset will be materially different from quoted or published prices, from the prices used by others for the same security or other asset and/or from the value that actually could be or is realized upon the sale of that security or other asset. For example, the Trust’s NAV could be adversely affected if the Trust’s determinations regarding the fair value of the Trust’s investments were materially higher than the values that the Trust ultimately realizes upon the disposal of such investments. Where market quotations are not readily available, valuation may require more research than for more liquid investments. See “Risks—Risks Associated with Private Company Investments—Private Company Valuation Risk.” In addition,

[Table of Contents](#)

elements of judgment may play a greater role in valuation in such cases than for investments with a more active secondary market because there is less reliable objective data available. The Advisor anticipates that up to approximately 25% of the Trust's net assets (calculated at the time of investment) may be valued using fair value. This percentage may increase over the life of the Trust and may exceed 25% of the Trust's net assets due to a number of factors, such as when the Trust nears dissolution; outflows of cash from time to time; and changes in the valuation of these investments. The Trust prices its shares daily and therefore all assets, including assets valued at fair value, are valued daily.

The Trust's NAV per common share is a critical component in several operational matters including computation of advisory and services fees. Consequently, variance in the valuation of the Trust's investments will impact, positively or negatively, the fees and expenses shareholders will pay.

New Issues Risk. "New Issues" are IPOs of U.S. equity securities. There is no assurance that the Trust will have access to profitable IPOs and therefore investors should not rely on any past gains from IPOs as an indication of future performance of the Trust. The investment performance of the Trust during periods when it is unable to invest significantly or at all in IPOs may be lower than during periods when the Trust is able to do so. Securities issued in IPOs are subject to many of the same risks as investing in companies with smaller market capitalizations. Securities issued in IPOs have no trading history, and information about the companies may be available for very limited periods. In addition, some companies in IPOs are involved in relatively new industries or lines of business, which may not be widely understood by investors. Some of these companies may be undercapitalized or regarded as developmental stage companies, without revenues or operating income, or the near-term prospects of achieving them. Further, the prices of securities sold in IPOs may be highly volatile or may decline shortly after the IPO. When an initial public offering is brought to the market, availability may be limited and the Trust may not be able to buy any shares at the offering price, or, if it is able to buy shares, it may not be able to buy as many shares at the offering price as it would like. The limited number of shares available for trading in some IPOs may make it more difficult for the Trust to buy or sell significant amounts of shares.

Growth Stock Risk. Securities of growth companies may be more volatile since such companies usually invest a high portion of earnings in their business, and they may lack the dividends of value stocks that can cushion stock prices in a falling market. Stocks of companies the Advisor believes are fast-growing may trade at a higher multiple of current earnings than other stocks. The values of these stocks may be more sensitive to changes in current or expected

earnings than the values of other stocks. Earnings disappointments often lead to sharply falling prices because investors buy growth stocks in anticipation of superior earnings growth. If the Advisor's assessment of the prospects for a company's earnings growth is wrong, or if the Advisor's judgment of how other investors will value the company's earnings growth is wrong, then the price of the company's stock may fall or may not approach the value that the Advisor has placed on it.

Value Stock Risk. The Advisor may be wrong in its assessment of a company's value and the stocks the Trust owns may not reach what the Advisor believes are their full values. A particular risk of the Trust's value stock investments is that some holdings may not recover and provide the capital growth anticipated or a stock judged to be undervalued may actually be appropriately priced. Further, because the prices of value-oriented securities tend to correlate more closely with economic cycles than growth-oriented securities, they generally are more sensitive to changing economic conditions, such as changes in interest rates, corporate earnings, and industrial production. The market may not favor value-oriented stocks and may not favor equities at all. During those periods, the Trust's relative performance may suffer.

Risks Associated with the Trust's Options Strategy. The ability of the Trust to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust's risk-adjusted returns is partially dependent on the successful implementation of its options strategy. There are several risks associated with transactions in options on securities. For example, there are significant differences between the securities and options markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between these markets, causing a given transaction not to achieve its objectives. A decision as to whether, when and how to use options involves the exercise of skill and judgment, and even a well-conceived transaction may be unsuccessful to some degree because of market behavior or unexpected events.

Risks of Writing Options. As the writer of a covered call option, the Trust forgoes, during the option's life, the opportunity to profit from increases in the market value of the security covering the call option above the sum of the premium and the strike price of the call, but has retained the risk of loss should the price of the underlying security decline. In other words, as the Trust writes covered calls over more of its portfolio, the Trust's ability to benefit from capital appreciation becomes more limited.

If the Trust writes call options on individual securities or index call options that include securities, in each case, that are not in the Trust's portfolio or that are not in the same proportion as securities in the Trust's portfolio, the Trust will experience loss, which theoretically

[Table of Contents](#)

could be unlimited, if the value of the individual security, index or basket of securities appreciates above the exercise price of the index option written by the Trust.

When the Trust writes put options, it bears the risk of loss if the value of the underlying stock declines below the exercise price minus the put premium. If the option is exercised, the Trust could incur a loss if it is required to purchase the stock underlying the put option at a price greater than the market price of the stock at the time of exercise plus the put premium the Trust received when it wrote the option. While the Trust's potential gain in writing a put option is limited to the premium received from the purchaser of the put option, the Trust risks a loss equal to the entire exercise price of the option minus the put premium.

See "Risks—Risks Associated with the Trust's Options Strategy—Risks of Writing Options."

Exchange-Listed Options Risks. There can be no assurance that a liquid market will exist when the Trust seeks to close out an exchange-listed option position. Reasons for the absence of a liquid secondary market on an exchange include the following: (i) there may be insufficient trading interest in certain options; (ii) restrictions may be imposed by an exchange on opening transactions or closing transactions or both; (iii) trading halts, suspensions or other restrictions may be imposed with respect to particular classes or series of options; (iv) unusual or unforeseen circumstances may interrupt normal operations on an exchange; (v) the facilities of an exchange or the Options Clearing Corporation (the "OCC") may not at all times be adequate to handle current trading volume; or (vi) one or more exchanges could, for economic or other reasons, decide or be compelled at some future date to discontinue the trading of options (or a particular class or series of options). See "Risks—Risks Associated with the Trust's Options Strategy—Exchange-Listed Options Risks."

Over-the-Counter Options Risk. The Trust may write (sell) unlisted OTC options to a significant extent. OTC options differ from exchange-listed options in that they are two-party contracts, with exercise price, premium and other terms negotiated between buyer and seller, and generally do not have as much market liquidity as exchange-listed options. The OTC options written by the Trust will not be issued, guaranteed or cleared by the OCC. In addition, the Trust's ability to terminate OTC options may be more limited than with exchange-traded options. Banks, broker-dealers or other financial institutions participating in such transactions may fail to settle a transaction in accordance with the terms of the option as written. In the event of default or insolvency of the counterparty, the

[Table of Contents](#)

Trust may be unable to liquidate an OTC option position. See “Risks—Risks Associated with the Trust’s Options Strategy—Over-the-Counter Options Risk.”

Index Options Risk. The Trust may sell index put and call options from time to time. The purchaser of an index put option has the right to any depreciation in the value of the index below the exercise price of the option on or before the expiration date. The purchaser of an index call option has the right to any appreciation in the value of the index over the exercise price of the option on or before the expiration date. Because the exercise of index options is settled in cash, sellers of index call options, such as the Trust, cannot provide in advance for their potential settlement obligations by acquiring and holding the underlying securities. The Trust will lose money if it is required to pay the purchaser of an index option the difference between the cash value of the index on which the option was written and the exercise price and such difference is greater than the premium received by the Trust for writing the option. See “Risks—Risks Associated with the Trust’s Options Strategy—Index Options Risk.”

Limitation on Options Writing Risk. The number of call options the Trust can write is limited by the total assets the Trust holds and is further limited by the fact that all options represent 100 share lots of the underlying common stock. Furthermore, the Trust’s options transactions will be subject to limitations established by each of the exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities on which such options are traded. See “Risks—Risks Associated with the Trust’s Options Strategy—Limitation on Options Writing Risk.”

Tax Risk. Income on options on individual stocks will generally not be recognized by the Trust for tax purposes until an option is exercised, lapses or is subject to a “closing transaction” (as defined by applicable regulations) pursuant to which the Trust’s obligations with respect to the option are otherwise terminated. If the option lapses without exercise or is otherwise subject to a closing transaction, the premiums received by the Trust from the writing of such options will generally be characterized as short-term capital gain. If an option written by the Trust is exercised, the Trust may recognize taxable gain depending on the exercise price of the option, the option premium, and the tax basis of the security underlying the option. The character of any gain on the sale of the underlying security as short-term or long-term capital gain will depend on the holding period of the Trust in the underlying security. In general, distributions received by shareholders of the Trust that are attributable to short-term capital gains recognized by the Trust from its options writing activities will be taxed to such shareholders as ordinary income and will not be eligible for the reduced tax rate applicable to qualified dividend income.

[Table of Contents](#)

Index options will generally be “marked-to-market” for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, the Trust will generally recognize gain or loss on the last day of each taxable year equal to the difference between the value of the index option on that date and the adjusted basis of the index option. The adjusted basis of the index option will consequently be increased by such gain or decreased by such loss. Any gain or loss with respect to index options will be treated as short-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 40% of such gain or loss and long-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 60% of such gain or loss. Because the mark-to-market rules may cause the Trust to recognize gain in advance of the receipt of cash, the Trust may be required to dispose of investments in order to meet its distribution requirements.

Preferred Securities Risk. There are special risks associated with investing in preferred securities, including deferral, subordination, limited voting rights, special redemption rights, risks associated with trust preferred securities and risks associated with new types of securities. See “Risks—Preferred Securities Risk.”

Convertible Securities Risk. Convertible securities generally offer lower interest or dividend yields than non-convertible securities of similar quality. The market values of convertible securities tend to decline as interest rates increase and, conversely, to increase as interest rates decline. However, when the market price of the common stock underlying a convertible security exceeds the conversion price, the convertible security tends to reflect the market price of the underlying common stock. As the market price of the underlying common stock declines, the convertible security tends to trade increasingly on a yield basis and thus may not decline in price to the same extent as the underlying common stock. Synthetic convertible securities are subject to additional risks, including risks associated with derivatives. See “Risks—Convertible Securities Risk.”

Warrants Risk. If the price of the underlying stock does not rise above the exercise price before the warrant expires, the warrant generally expires without any value and the Trust loses any amount it paid for the warrant. Thus, investments in warrants may involve substantially more risk than investments in common stock. Warrants may trade in the same markets as their underlying stock; however, the price of the warrant does not necessarily move with the price of the underlying stock.

Investment Companies and ETFs Risk. Subject to the limitations set forth in the Investment Company Act and the Trust’s governing documents or as otherwise permitted by the SEC, the Trust may acquire shares in other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, some of which may be affiliated investment companies. The market value of the shares of other investment companies may differ from their NAV. As an investor in investment companies, including

[Table of Contents](#)

ETFs or BDCs, the Trust would bear its ratable share of that entity's expenses, including its investment advisory and administration fees, while continuing to pay its own advisory and administration fees and other expenses (to the extent not offset by the Advisor through waivers). As a result, shareholders will be absorbing duplicate levels of fees with respect to investments in other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs (to the extent not offset by the Advisor through waivers).

The securities of other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, in which the Trust may invest may be leveraged. As a result, the Trust may be indirectly exposed to leverage through an investment in such securities. An investment in securities of other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, that use leverage may expose the Trust to higher volatility in the market value of such securities and the possibility that the Trust's long-term returns on such securities (and, indirectly, the long-term returns of the Trust's common shares) will be diminished.

ETFs are generally not actively managed and may be affected by a general decline in market segments relating to its index. An ETF typically invests in securities included in, or representative of, its index regardless of their investment merits and does not attempt to take defensive positions in declining markets.

Fixed-Income Securities Risks. Fixed-income securities in which the Trust may invest are generally subject to the following risks:

Interest Rate Risk. The market value of bonds and other fixed-income securities changes in response to interest rate changes and other factors. Interest rate risk is the risk that prices of bonds and other fixed-income securities will increase as interest rates fall and decrease as interest rates rise. The Trust may be subject to a greater risk of rising interest rates due to the current period of historically low interest rates. The U.S. Federal Reserve recently increased the federal funds rate and has indicated that it may raise the federal funds rate further and tighten the monetary supply in the near future. Therefore, there is a risk that interest rates will rise, which will likely drive down prices of bonds and other fixed-income securities. The magnitude of these fluctuations in the market price of bonds and other fixed-income securities is generally greater for those securities with longer maturities. Fluctuations in the market price of the Trust's investments will not affect interest income derived from instruments already owned by the Trust, but will be reflected in the Trust's NAV. The Trust may lose money if short-term or long-term interest rates rise sharply in a manner not anticipated by the Advisor. To the extent the Trust invests in debt securities that may be prepaid at the option of the obligor (such as mortgage-related securities), the sensitivity of such securities to changes in interest rates may increase (to the detriment of the Trust) when interest rates rise. Moreover, because rates on

[Table of Contents](#)

certain floating rate debt securities typically reset only periodically, changes in prevailing interest rates (and particularly sudden and significant changes) can be expected to cause some fluctuations in the NAV of the Trust to the extent that it invests in floating rate debt securities. These basic principles of bond prices also apply to U.S. Government securities. A security backed by the “full faith and credit” of the U.S. Government is guaranteed only as to its stated interest rate and face value at maturity, not its current market price. Just like other fixed-income securities, government-guaranteed securities will fluctuate in value when interest rates change.

During periods in which the Trust may use leverage, such use of leverage will tend to increase the Trust’s interest rate risk. The Trust may utilize certain strategies, including taking positions in futures or interest rate swaps, for the purpose of reducing the interest rate sensitivity of fixed-income securities held by the Trust and decreasing the Trust’s exposure to interest rate risk. The Trust is not required to hedge its exposure to interest rate risk and may choose not to do so. In addition, there is no assurance that any attempts by the Trust to reduce interest rate risk will be successful or that any hedges that the Trust may establish will perfectly correlate with movements in interest rates. See “Risks—Fixed-Income Securities Risk—Interest Rate Risk.”

Issuer Risk. The value of fixed-income securities may decline for a number of reasons which directly relate to the issuer, such as management performance, financial leverage, reduced demand for the issuer’s goods and services, historical and prospective earnings of the issuer and the value of the assets of the issuer.

Credit Risk. Credit risk is the risk that one or more fixed-income securities in the Trust’s portfolio will decline in price or fail to pay interest or principal when due because the issuer of the security experiences a decline in its financial status. Credit risk is increased when a portfolio security is downgraded or the perceived creditworthiness of the issuer deteriorates. To the extent the Trust invests in below investment grade securities, it will be exposed to a greater amount of credit risk than a fund that only invests in investment grade securities. See “Risks—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.” In addition, to the extent the Trust uses credit derivatives, such use will expose it to additional risk in the event that the bonds underlying the derivatives default. The degree of credit risk depends on the issuer’s financial condition and on the terms of the securities.

Prepayment Risk. During periods of declining interest rates, borrowers may exercise their option to prepay principal earlier than scheduled. For fixed rate securities, such payments often occur during periods of declining interest rates, forcing the Trust to reinvest in lower yielding securities, resulting in a possible decline in the Trust’s

[Table of Contents](#)

income and distributions to shareholders. This is known as prepayment or “call” risk. Below investment grade securities frequently have call features that allow the issuer to redeem the security at dates prior to its stated maturity at a specified price (typically greater than par) only if certain prescribed conditions are met (*i.e.*, “call protection”). For premium bonds (bonds acquired at prices that exceed their par or principal value) purchased by the Trust, prepayment risk may be enhanced.

Reinvestment Risk. Reinvestment risk is the risk that income from the Trust’s portfolio will decline if the Trust invests the proceeds from matured, traded or called fixed-income securities at market interest rates that are below the Trust portfolio’s current earnings rate.

Duration and Maturity Risk. The Trust has no set policy regarding portfolio maturity or duration of the fixed-income securities it may hold. The Advisor may seek to adjust the portfolio’s duration or maturity based on its assessment of current and projected market conditions and all other factors that the Advisor deems relevant.

Any decisions as to the targeted duration or maturity of any particular category of investments or of the Trust’s portfolio generally will be made based on all pertinent market factors at any given time. The Trust may incur costs in seeking to adjust the portfolio’s average duration or maturity. There can be no assurance that the Advisor’s assessment of current and projected market conditions will be correct or that any strategy to adjust the portfolio’s duration or maturity will be successful at any given time. In general, the longer the duration of any fixed-income securities in the Trust’s portfolio, the more exposure the Trust will have to the interest rate risks described above.

Spread Risk. Wider credit spreads and decreasing market values typically represent a deterioration of a debt security’s credit soundness and a perceived greater likelihood or risk of default by the issuer.

Corporate Bonds Risk. The market value of a corporate bond generally may be expected to rise and fall inversely with interest rates. The market value of intermediate and longer term corporate bonds is generally more sensitive to changes in interest rates than is the market value of shorter term corporate bonds. The market value of a corporate bond also may be affected by factors directly related to the issuer, such as investors’ perceptions of the creditworthiness of the issuer, the issuer’s financial performance, perceptions of the issuer in the market place, performance of management of the issuer, the issuer’s capital structure and use of financial leverage and demand for the issuer’s goods and services. Certain risks associated with investments in corporate bonds are described elsewhere in this prospectus in further detail, including under “Risks—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Credit Risk,” “Risks—Fixed-Income Securities

[Table of Contents](#)

Risks—Interest Rate Risk,” “Risks—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Prepayment Risk,” “Risks—Inflation Risk” and “Risks—Deflation Risk.” There is a risk that the issuers of corporate bonds may not be able to meet their obligations on interest or principal payments at the time called for by an instrument. Corporate bonds of below investment grade quality are often high risk and have speculative characteristics and may be particularly susceptible to adverse issuer-specific developments. Corporate bonds of below investment grade quality are subject to the risks described herein under “Risks—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.”

Below Investment Grade Securities Risk. The Trust may invest in securities that are rated, at the time of investment, below investment grade quality (rated Ba/BB or below, or judged to be of comparable quality by the Advisor), which are commonly referred to as “high yield” or “junk” bonds and are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer’s capacity to pay interest and repay principal when due. The value of high yield, lower quality bonds is affected by the creditworthiness of the issuers of the securities and by general economic and specific industry conditions. Issuers of high yield bonds are not perceived to be as strong financially as those with higher credit ratings. These issuers are more vulnerable to financial setbacks and recession than more creditworthy issuers, which may impair their ability to make interest and principal payments. Lower grade securities may be particularly susceptible to economic downturns. It is likely that an economic recession could severely disrupt the market for such securities and may have an adverse impact on the value of such securities. In addition, it is likely that any such economic downturn could adversely affect the ability of the issuers of such securities to repay principal and pay interest thereon and increase the incidence of default for such securities. The secondary market for lower grade securities may be less liquid than that for higher rated securities. Adverse conditions could make it difficult at times for the Trust to sell certain securities or could result in lower prices than those used in calculating the Trust’s NAV. Because of the substantial risks associated with investments in lower grade securities, you could lose money on your investment in common shares of the Trust, both in the short-term and the long-term. To the extent that the Trust invests in lower grade securities that have not been rated by a rating agency, the Trust’s ability to achieve its investment objectives will be more dependent on the Advisor’s credit analysis than would be the case when the Trust invests in rated securities. See “Risks—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.”

Distressed and Defaulted Securities Risk. Investments in the securities of financially distressed issuers are speculative and involve substantial risks. These securities may present a substantial risk of default or may be in default at the time of investment. The Trust may incur additional expenses to the extent it is required to seek recovery upon a default in the payment of principal or interest on its portfolio

[Table of Contents](#)

holdings. In any reorganization or liquidation proceeding relating to a portfolio company, the Trust may lose its entire investment or may be required to accept cash or securities with a value less than its original investment. Among the risks inherent in investments in a troubled entity is that it frequently may be difficult to obtain information as to the true financial condition of such issuer. The Advisor's judgment about the credit quality of the issuer and the relative value and liquidity of its securities may prove to be wrong. Distressed securities and any securities received in an exchange for such securities may be subject to restrictions on resale.

Unrated Securities Risk. Because the Trust may purchase securities that are not rated by any rating organization, the Advisor may, after assessing their credit quality, internally assign ratings to certain of those securities in categories similar to those of rating organizations. Some unrated securities may not have an active trading market or may be difficult to value, which means the Trust might have difficulty selling them promptly at an acceptable price. To the extent that the Trust invests in unrated securities, the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives will be more dependent on the Advisor's credit analysis than would be the case when the Trust invests in rated securities.

U.S. Government Securities Risk. U.S. Government debt securities generally involve lower levels of credit risk than other types of fixed-income securities of similar maturities, although, as a result, the yields available from U.S. Government debt securities are generally lower than the yields available from such other securities. Like other fixed-income securities, the values of U.S. Government securities change as interest rates fluctuate.

Non-U.S. Securities Risk. The Trust may invest in securities of non-U.S. issuers ("Non-U.S. Securities"). Such investments involve certain risks not involved in domestic investments. Securities markets in foreign countries often are not as developed, efficient or liquid as securities markets in the United States and, therefore, the prices of Non-U.S. Securities can be more volatile. Certain foreign countries may impose restrictions on the ability of issuers of Non-U.S. Securities to make payments of principal and interest or dividends to investors located outside the country. In addition, the Trust will be subject to risks associated with adverse political and economic developments in foreign countries, which could cause the Trust to lose money on its investments in Non-U.S. Securities. The Trust will be subject to additional risks if it invests in Non-U.S. Securities, which include seizure or nationalization of foreign deposits. Non-U.S. Securities may trade on days when the Trust's common shares are not priced or traded. See "Risks—Non-U.S. Securities Risk."

Emerging Markets Risk. The Trust may invest in Non-U.S. Securities of issuers in so-called "emerging markets" (or lesser developed

countries). Such investments are particularly speculative and entail all of the risks of investing in Non-U.S. Securities but to a heightened degree. “Emerging market” countries generally include every nation in the world except developed countries, that is, the United States, Canada, Japan, Australia, New Zealand and most countries located in Western Europe. Investments in the securities of issuers domiciled in countries with emerging capital markets involve certain additional risks that do not generally apply to investments in securities of issuers in more developed capital markets, such as (i) low or non-existent trading volume, resulting in a lack of liquidity and increased volatility in prices for such securities, as compared to securities of comparable issuers in more developed capital markets; (ii) uncertain national policies and social, political and economic instability, increasing the potential for expropriation of assets, confiscatory taxation, high rates of inflation or unfavorable diplomatic developments; (iii) possible fluctuations in exchange rates, differing legal systems and the existence or possible imposition of exchange controls, custodial restrictions or other foreign or U.S. governmental laws or restrictions applicable to such investments; (iv) national policies that may limit the Trust’s investment opportunities such as restrictions on investment in issuers or industries deemed sensitive to national interests; and (v) the lack or relatively early development of legal structures governing private and foreign investments and private property. See “Risks—Emerging Markets Risk.”

Foreign Currency Risk. Because the Trust may invest in securities denominated or quoted in currencies other than the U.S. dollar, changes in foreign currency exchange rates may affect the value of securities held by the Trust and the unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments. Currencies of certain countries may be volatile and therefore may affect the value of securities denominated in such currencies, which means that the Trust’s NAV could decline as a result of changes in the exchange rates between foreign currencies and the U.S. dollar. The Advisor may, but is not required to, elect for the Trust to seek to protect itself from changes in currency exchange rates through hedging transactions depending on market conditions. In addition, certain countries, particularly emerging market countries, may impose foreign currency exchange controls or other restrictions on the transferability, repatriation or convertibility of currency.

Leverage Risk. The use of leverage creates an opportunity for increased common share net investment income dividends, but also creates risks for the holders of common shares. The Trust cannot assure you that the use of leverage, if employed, will result in a higher yield on the common shares. Any leveraging strategy the Trust employs may not be successful.

[Table of Contents](#)

Leverage involves risks and special considerations for common shareholders, including:

- the likelihood of greater volatility of NAV, market price and dividend rate of the common shares than a comparable portfolio without leverage;
- the risk that fluctuations in interest rates or dividend rates on any leverage that the Trust must pay will reduce the return to the common shareholders;
- the effect of leverage in a declining market, which is likely to cause a greater decline in the NAV of the common shares than if the Trust were not leveraged, which may result in a greater decline in the market price of the common shares;
- when the Trust uses financial leverage, the management fee payable to the Advisor will be higher than if the Trust did not use leverage; and
- leverage may increase operating costs, which may reduce total return.

The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares, but may in the future borrow funds from banks or other financial institutions, or issue debt securities or preferred shares, as described in this prospectus. Certain types of leverage the Trust may use may result in the Trust being subject to covenants relating to asset coverage and portfolio composition requirements. The Trust may be subject to certain restrictions on investments imposed by guidelines of one or more rating agencies, which may issue ratings for any debt securities or preferred shares issued by the Trust. The terms of any borrowings or these rating agency guidelines may impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed by the Investment Company Act. The Advisor does not believe that these covenants or guidelines will impede it from managing the Trust's portfolio in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies. See "Risks—Leverage Risk."

Structured Investments Risks. The Trust may invest in structured products, including structured notes, ELNs and other types of structured products. Holders of structured products bear the risks of the underlying investments, index or reference obligation and are subject to counterparty risk. The Trust may have the right to receive payments only from the structured product and generally does not have direct rights against the issuer or the entity that sold the assets to be securitized. While certain structured products enable the investor to acquire interests in a pool of securities without the brokerage and other expenses associated with directly holding the same securities,

investors in structured products generally pay their share of the structured product's administrative and other expenses. Although it is difficult to predict whether the prices of indices and securities underlying structured products will rise or fall, these prices (and, therefore, the prices of structured products) will be influenced by the same types of political and economic events that affect issuers of securities and capital markets generally. If the issuer of a structured product uses shorter term financing to purchase longer term securities, the issuer may be forced to sell its securities at below market prices if it experiences difficulty in obtaining such financing, which may adversely affect the value of the structured products owned by the Trust.

ELNs are hybrid securities with characteristics of both fixed-income and equity securities. An ELN is a debt instrument, usually a bond, that pays interest based upon the performance of an underlying equity, which can be a single stock, basket of stocks or an equity index. The interest payment on an ELN may in some cases be leveraged so that, in percentage terms, it exceeds the relative performance of the market. ELNs generally are subject to the risks associated with the securities of equity issuers, default risk and counterparty risk. Additionally, because the Trust may use ELNs as an alternative or complement to its options strategy, the use of ELNs in this manner would expose the Trust to the risk that such ELNs will not perform as anticipated, and the risk that the use of ELNs will expose the Trust to different or additional default and counterparty risk as compared to a similar investment executed in an options strategy.

See "Risks—Structured Investments Risks."

Strategic Transactions and Derivatives Risk. The Trust may engage in various Strategic Transactions for duration management and other risk management purposes, including to attempt to protect against possible changes in the market value of the Trust's portfolio resulting from trends in the securities markets and changes in interest rates or to protect the Trust's unrealized gains in the value of its portfolio securities, to facilitate the sale of portfolio securities for investment purposes or to establish a position in the securities markets as a temporary substitute for purchasing particular securities or to enhance income or gain. Derivatives are financial contracts or instruments whose value depends on, or is derived from, the value of an underlying asset, reference rate or index (or relationship between two indices). The Trust also may use derivatives to add leverage to the portfolio and/or to hedge against increases in the Trust's costs associated with any leverage strategy that it may employ. The use of Strategic Transactions to enhance current income may be particularly speculative.

[Table of Contents](#)

Strategic Transactions involve risks. The risks associated with Strategic Transactions include (i) the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, (ii) the possible default of the counterparty to the transaction, (iii) illiquidity of the derivative instruments, and (iv) high volatility losses caused by unanticipated market movements, which are potentially unlimited. Although both OTC and exchange-traded derivatives markets may experience a lack of liquidity, OTC non-standardized derivative transactions are generally less liquid than exchange-traded instruments. The illiquidity of the derivatives markets may be due to various factors, including congestion, disorderly markets, limitations on deliverable supplies, the participation of speculators, government regulation and intervention, and technical and operational or system failures. In addition, daily limits on price fluctuations and speculative position limits on exchanges on which the Trust may conduct its transactions in derivative instruments may prevent prompt liquidation of positions, subjecting the Trust to the potential of greater losses. Furthermore, the Trust's ability to successfully use Strategic Transactions depends on the Advisor's ability to predict pertinent securities prices, interest rates, currency exchange rates and other economic factors, which cannot be assured. The use of Strategic Transactions may result in losses greater than if they had not been used, may require the Trust to sell or purchase portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than current market values, may limit the amount of appreciation the Trust can realize on an investment or may cause the Trust to hold a security that it might otherwise sell. Additionally, segregated or earmarked liquid assets, amounts paid by the Trust as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to Strategic Transactions are not otherwise available to the Trust for investment purposes.

Many OTC derivatives are valued on the basis of dealers' pricing of these instruments. However, the price at which dealers value a particular derivative and the price that the same dealers would actually be willing to pay for such derivative should the Trust wish or be forced to sell such position may be materially different. Such differences can result in an overstatement of the Trust's NAV and may materially adversely affect the Trust in situations in which the Trust is required to sell derivative instruments. Exchange-traded derivatives and OTC derivative transactions submitted for clearing through a central counterparty have become subject to minimum initial and variation margin requirements set by the relevant clearinghouse, as well as possible margin requirements mandated by the SEC or the Commodity Futures Trading Commission ("CFTC"). The CFTC and federal banking regulators also have imposed margin requirements on non-cleared OTC derivatives, and the SEC has proposed (but not yet finalized) such non-cleared margin requirements. As applicable, margin requirements will increase the overall costs for the Trust.

See "Risks—Strategic Transactions and Derivatives Risk."

[Table of Contents](#)

Counterparty Risk. The Trust will be subject to credit risk with respect to the counterparties to the derivative contracts purchased by the Trust. Because derivative transactions in which the Trust may engage may involve instruments that are not traded on an exchange or cleared through a central counterparty but are instead traded between counterparties based on contractual relationships, the Trust is subject to the risk that a counterparty will not perform its obligations under the related contracts. If a counterparty becomes bankrupt or otherwise fails to perform its obligations due to financial difficulties, the Trust may experience significant delays in obtaining any recovery in bankruptcy or other reorganization proceedings. The Trust may obtain only a limited recovery, or may obtain no recovery, in such circumstances. Although the Trust intends to enter into transactions only with counterparties that the Advisor believes to be creditworthy, there can be no assurance that, as a result, a counterparty will not default and that the Trust will not sustain a loss on a transaction. In the event of the counterparty's bankruptcy or insolvency, the Trust's collateral may be subject to the conflicting claims of the counterparty's creditors, and the Trust may be exposed to the risk of a court treating the Trust as a general unsecured creditor of the counterparty, rather than as the owner of the collateral. See "Risks—Counterparty Risk."

Swaps Risk. Swaps are a type of derivative. Swap agreements involve the risk that the party with which the Trust has entered into the swap will default on its obligation to pay the Trust and the risk that the Trust will not be able to meet its obligations to pay the other party to the agreement. In order to seek to hedge the value of the Trust's portfolio, to hedge against increases in the Trust's cost associated with interest payments on any outstanding borrowings or to seek to increase the Trust's return, the Trust may enter into swaps, including interest rate swap, total return swap (sometimes referred to as a "contract for difference") and/or credit default swap transactions. In interest rate swap transactions, there is a risk that yields will move in the direction opposite of the direction anticipated by the Trust, which would cause the Trust to make payments to its counterparty in the transaction that could adversely affect Trust performance. In addition to the risks applicable to swaps generally (including counterparty risk, high volatility, illiquidity risk and credit risk), credit default swap transactions involve special risks because they are difficult to value, are highly susceptible to liquidity and credit risk, and generally pay a return to the party that has paid the premium only in the event of an actual default by the issuer of the underlying obligation (as opposed to a credit downgrade or other indication of financial difficulty). Credit default and total return swap agreements may effectively add leverage to the Trust's portfolio because, in addition to its Managed Assets, the Trust would be subject to investment exposure on the notional amount of the swap. Total return swap agreements are subject to the risk that a counterparty will default on its payment obligations to the Trust thereunder. The Trust is not required to enter

[Table of Contents](#)

into swap transactions for hedging purposes or to enhance income or gain and may choose not to do so. In addition, the swaps market is subject to a changing regulatory environment. It is possible that regulatory or other developments in the swaps market could adversely affect the Trust's ability to successfully use swaps. See "Risks—Swaps Risk."

Risk Associated with Recent Market Events. The global financial crisis that began in 2008 caused a significant decline in the value and liquidity of many securities and unprecedented volatility in the markets. Periods of market volatility remain, and may continue to occur in the future, in response to various political, social and economic events both within and outside of the United States. These conditions have resulted in, and in many cases continue to result in, greater price volatility, less liquidity, widening credit spreads and a lack of price transparency, with many securities remaining illiquid and of uncertain value. Such market conditions may adversely affect the Trust, including by making valuation of some of the Trust's securities uncertain and/or result in sudden and significant valuation increases or declines in the Trust's holdings. If there is a significant decline in the value of the Trust's portfolio, this may impact the asset coverage levels for any outstanding leverage the Trust may have.

Risks resulting from any future debt or other economic crisis could also have a detrimental impact on the global economic recovery, the financial condition of financial institutions and the Trust's business, financial condition and results of operation. Market and economic disruptions have affected, and may in the future affect, consumer confidence levels and spending, personal bankruptcy rates, levels of incurrence and default on consumer debt and home prices, among other factors. To the extent uncertainty regarding the U.S. or global economy negatively impacts consumer confidence and consumer credit factors, the Trust's business, financial condition and results of operations could be significantly and adversely affected. Downgrades to the credit ratings of major banks could result in increased borrowing costs for such banks and negatively affect the broader economy. Moreover, Federal Reserve policy, including with respect to certain interest rates, may also adversely affect the value, volatility and liquidity of dividend- and interest-paying securities. Market volatility, rising interest rates and/or unfavorable economic conditions could impair the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives.

Market Disruption and Geopolitical Risk. The occurrence of events similar to those in recent years, such as the aftermath of the war in Iraq, instability in Afghanistan, Pakistan, Egypt, Libya, Syria, Russia, Ukraine and the Middle East, ongoing epidemics of infectious diseases in certain parts of the world, terrorist attacks in the United States and around the world, social and political discord, debt crises (such as the Greek crisis), sovereign debt downgrades, increasingly strained relations between the United States and a number of foreign

[Table of Contents](#)

countries, including traditional allies, such as certain European countries, and historical adversaries, such as North Korea, Iran, China and Russia, and the international community generally, new and continued political unrest in various countries, such as Venezuela and Spain, the exit or potential exit of one or more countries from the European Union (the “EU”) or the European Monetary Union (the “EMU”), continued changes in the balance of political power among and within the branches of the U.S. government, among others, may result in market volatility, may have long term effects on the U.S. and worldwide financial markets, and may cause further economic uncertainties in the United States and worldwide.

The decision made in the British referendum of June 23, 2016 to leave the EU (“Brexit”) has led to volatility in the financial markets of the United Kingdom and more broadly across Europe and may also lead to weakening in consumer, corporate and financial confidence in such markets. The formal notification to the European Council required under Article 50 of the Treaty on EU was made on March 29, 2017, triggering a two year period during which the terms of exit are to be negotiated. Pursuant to an agreement between the United Kingdom and the EU, the date of Brexit has been extended to October 31, 2019. The longer term economic, legal, political and social framework to be put in place between the United Kingdom and the EU are unclear at this stage and are likely to lead to ongoing political and economic uncertainty and periods of exacerbated volatility in both the United Kingdom and in wider European markets for some time. In particular, the decision made in Brexit may lead to a call for similar referendums in other European jurisdictions which may cause increased economic volatility in the European and global markets. This mid- to long-term uncertainty may have an adverse effect on the economy generally and on the ability of the Trust to execute its strategies and to receive attractive returns. In particular, currency volatility may mean that the returns of the Trust and its investments are adversely affected by market movements and may make it more difficult, or more expensive, for the Trust to execute prudent currency hedging policies. Potential decline in the value of the British Pound and/or the Euro against other currencies, along with the potential downgrading of the United Kingdom’s sovereign credit rating, may also have an impact on the performance of portfolio companies or investments located in the United Kingdom or Europe. In light of the above, no definitive assessment can currently be made regarding the impact that Brexit will have on the Trust, its investments or its organization more generally.

The occurrence of any of these above events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Trust’s portfolio. The Trust does not know how long the securities markets may be affected by similar events and cannot predict the effects of similar events in the future on the U.S. economy and securities markets. There can be no assurance that similar events and other market disruptions will not have other material and adverse implications. See “Risks—Market Disruption and Geopolitical Risk.”

[Table of Contents](#)

Regulation and Government Intervention Risk. The U.S. Government and the Federal Reserve, as well as certain foreign governments, have in the past taken actions designed to support certain financial institutions and segments of the financial markets that have experienced extreme volatility. The withdrawal of Federal Reserve or other U.S. or non-U.S. governmental support could negatively affect financial markets generally and reduce the value and liquidity of certain securities. Additionally, with continued economic recovery and the cessation of certain market support activities, the Trust may face a heightened level of interest rate risk as a result of a rise or increased volatility in interest rates.

Federal, state, and other governments, their regulatory agencies or self-regulatory organizations may take actions that affect the regulation of the issuers in which the Trust invests in ways that are unforeseeable. Legislation or regulation may also change the way in which the Trust is regulated. Such legislation or regulation could limit or preclude the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives. See "Risks—Regulation and Government Intervention Risk."

Legal, Tax and Regulatory Risks. Legal, tax and regulatory changes could occur that may have material adverse effects on the Trust. For example, the regulatory and tax environment for derivative instruments in which the Trust may participate is evolving, and such changes in the regulation or taxation of derivative instruments may have material adverse effects on the value of derivative instruments held by the Trust and the ability of the Trust to pursue its investment strategies.

To qualify for the favorable U.S. federal income tax treatment generally accorded to regulated investment companies ("RICs"), the Trust must, among other things, derive in each taxable year at least 90% of its gross income from certain prescribed sources and distribute for each taxable year at least 90% of its "investment company taxable income" (generally, ordinary income plus the excess, if any, of net short-term capital gain over net long-term capital loss). If for any taxable year the Trust does not qualify as a RIC, all of its taxable income for that year (including its net capital gain) would be subject to tax at regular corporate rates without any deduction for distributions to shareholders, and such distributions would be taxable as ordinary dividends to the extent of the Trust's current and accumulated earnings and profits.

The rules dealing with U.S. federal income taxation are constantly under review by persons involved in the legislative process and by the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") and the U.S. Treasury Department. The recently enacted Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") makes substantial changes to the Code. Among those changes are a significant permanent reduction in the generally applicable corporate tax rate, changes in the taxation of individuals and other

[Table of Contents](#)

non-corporate taxpayers that generally but not universally reduce their taxes on a temporary basis subject to “sunset” provisions, the elimination or modification of various previously allowed deductions (including substantial limitations on the deductibility of interest and, in the case of individuals, the deduction for personal state and local taxes), certain additional limitations on the deduction of net operating losses, certain preferential rates of taxation on certain dividends and certain business income derived by non-corporate taxpayers in comparison to other ordinary income recognized by such taxpayers, and significant changes to the international tax rules. The effect of these, and the many other, changes made in the Tax Act is highly uncertain, both in terms of their direct effect on the taxation of an investment in our common shares and their indirect effect on the value of our assets or our common shares or market conditions generally. Furthermore, many of the provisions of the Tax Act will require guidance through the issuance of Treasury regulations in order to assess their effect. There may be a substantial delay before such regulations are promulgated, increasing the uncertainty as to the ultimate effect of the statutory amendments on the Trust. There also may be technical corrections legislation proposed with respect to the Tax Act, the effect of which cannot be predicted and may be adverse to the Trust or its shareholders. See “Risks—Legal, Tax and Regulatory Risks.”

Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Advisor and Others. The investment activities of BlackRock, Inc. (“BlackRock”), the ultimate parent company of the Advisor, and its affiliates (including BlackRock and its subsidiaries (collectively, the “Affiliates”)) and their directors, officers and employees and of The PNC Financial Services Group, Inc. (which, through a subsidiary, has a significant economic interest in BlackRock, Inc.) and its subsidiaries (each with The PNC Financial Services Group, Inc., an “Entity” and collectively, the “Entities”) in the management of, or their interest in, their own accounts and other accounts they manage, may present conflicts of interest that could disadvantage the Trust and its shareholders. BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities provide investment management services to other funds and discretionary managed accounts that may follow investment programs similar to that of the Trust. Subject to the requirements of the Investment Company Act, BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities intend to engage in such activities and may receive compensation from third parties for their services. None of BlackRock, its Affiliates or the Entities are under any obligation to share any investment opportunity, idea or strategy with the Trust. As a result, BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities may compete with the Trust for appropriate investment opportunities. The results of the Trust’s investment activities, therefore, may differ from those of an Affiliate, and Entity or another account managed by an Affiliate or an Entity and it is possible that the Trust could sustain losses during periods in which one or more Affiliates, Entities and other accounts achieve profits on their trading for proprietary or other

accounts. BlackRock has adopted policies and procedures designed to address potential conflicts of interests. For additional information about potential conflicts of interest and the way in which BlackRock addresses such conflicts, please see “Conflicts of Interest” and “Management of the Trust—Portfolio Management—Potential Material Conflicts of Interest” in the SAI.

Anti-Takeover Provisions Risk. The Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Bylaws include provisions that could limit the ability of other entities or persons to acquire control of the Trust or convert the Trust to open-end status or to change the composition of the Board. Such provisions could limit the ability of shareholders to sell their shares at a premium over prevailing market prices by discouraging a third party from seeking to obtain control of the Trust. See “Certain Provisions in the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Bylaws.”

Additional Risks. For additional risks relating to investments in the Trust, including “REITs Risk,” “Master Limited Partnerships Risk,” “Yield and Ratings Risk,” “Insolvency of Issuers of Indebtedness Risk,” “LIBOR and Other Reference Rates Risk,” “Repurchase Agreements Risk,” “Reverse Repurchase Agreements Risk,” “Dollar Roll Transactions Risk,” “When-Issued, Forward Commitment and Delayed Delivery Transactions Risk,” “Event Risk,” “Defensive Investing Risk,” “Securities Lending Risk,” “Short Sales Risk,” “Inflation Risk,” “Deflation Risk,” “EMU and Redenomination Risk,” “Regulation as a ‘Commodity Pool,’” “Failures of Futures Commission Merchants and Clearing Organizations Risk,” “Investment Company Act Regulations,” “Legislation Risk,” “Decision-Making Authority Risk,” “Management Risk,” “Market and Selection Risk,” “Reliance on the Advisor Risk,” “Reliance on Service Providers Risk,” “Information Technology Systems Risk,” “Cyber Security Risk,” “Misconduct of Employees and of Service Providers Risk,” and “Portfolio Turnover Risk,” please see “Risks” beginning on page 69 of this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

SUMMARY OF TRUST EXPENSES

The following table shows estimated Trust expenses as a percentage of net assets attributable to common shares. The purpose of the following table and the example below is to help you understand all fees and expenses that you, as a holder of common shares, would bear directly or indirectly. The expenses shown in the table under “Estimated Annual Expenses” are based on estimated amounts for the Trust’s first full year of operations and assume that the Trust issues 70,000,000 common shares (representing an aggregate public offering price of \$1,400,000,000). The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares. See “Management of the Trust” and “Dividend Reinvestment Plan.” The following table should not be considered a representation of our future expenses. Actual expenses may be greater or less than shown. Except where the context suggests otherwise, whenever this prospectus contains a reference to fees or expenses paid by “you” or “us” or that “we” will pay fees or expenses, shareholders will indirectly bear such fees or expenses as investors in the Trust.

Shareholder Transaction Expenses

Sales load paid by you (as a percentage of offering price)(1)	None
Offering expenses borne by the Trust (as a percentage of offering price)(2)	None
Dividend reinvestment plan fees	\$ 0.02 per share for open-market purchases of common shares(3)

**Percentage
of net
assets
attributable
to common
shares**

Estimated Annual Expenses

Management fees(4)	1.25%
Other expenses	0.07%
Total annual expenses	1.32%

-
- (1) The Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay, from its own assets, compensation of \$0.52 per common share to the Underwriters in connection with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay such compensation paid by the Advisor.
- (2) The Advisor has agreed to pay all organizational expenses of the Trust and all offering costs associated with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor.
- (3) The Reinvestment Plan Agent’s (as defined below under “Dividend Reinvestment Plan”) fees for the handling of the reinvestment of dividends will be paid by the Trust. However, you will pay a \$0.02 per share fee incurred in connection with open-market purchases, which will be deducted from the value of the dividend. You will also be charged a \$2.50 sales fee and pay a \$0.15 per share fee if you direct the Reinvestment Plan Agent to sell your common shares held in a dividend reinvestment account. Per share fees include any applicable brokerage commissions the Reinvestment Plan Agent is required to pay.
- (4) The Trust and the Advisor have entered into a fee waiver agreement (the “Fee Waiver Agreement”), pursuant to which the Advisor has contractually agreed to waive the management fee with respect to any portion of the Trust’s assets attributable to investments in any equity and fixed-income mutual funds and ETFs managed by the Advisor or its affiliates that have a contractual fee, through June 30, 2020. Fees waived by the Advisor pursuant to the Fee Waiver Agreement for the Trust’s first year of operations are expected to amount to less than 0.01% of the Trust’s net assets attributable to common shares. The Fee Waiver Agreement may be terminated at any time, without the payment of any penalty, only by the Trust (upon the vote of a majority of the Trustees who are not “interested persons” (as defined in the Investment Company Act) of the Trust (the “Independent Trustees”) or a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Trust), upon 90 days’ written notice by the Trust to the Advisor.

[Table of Contents](#)

The following example illustrates the expenses that you would pay on a \$1,000 investment in common shares, assuming (i) total net annual expenses of 1.32% of net assets attributable to common shares, and (ii) a 5% annual return:

	<u>1 Year</u>	<u>3 Years</u>	<u>5 Years</u>	<u>10 Years</u>
Total expenses incurred	\$ 13	\$ 42	\$ 72	\$ 159

The example should not be considered a representation of future expenses. The example assumes that the estimated “Other expenses” set forth in the Estimated Annual Expenses table are accurate and that all dividends and distributions are reinvested at NAV. Actual expenses may be greater or less than those assumed. Moreover, the Trust’s actual rate of return may be greater or less than the hypothetical 5% return shown in the example.

[Table of Contents](#)

THE TRUST

The Trust is a newly organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company registered under the Investment Company Act. The Trust was organized as a Delaware statutory trust on February 20, 2019, pursuant to a Certificate of Trust, governed by the laws of the State of Delaware. The Trust has no operating history. The Trust's principal office is located at 100 Bellevue Parkway, Wilmington, Delaware 19809, and its telephone number is (800) 882-0052.

USE OF PROCEEDS

The net proceeds of the offering of common shares will be approximately \$1,400,000,000 (\$1,574,680,000 if the Underwriters exercise the over-allotment option in full). The Advisor has agreed to pay all of the Trust's organizational expenses and all offering costs associated with this offering, which amount to a total of \$3,331,918. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor. The Trust will invest the net proceeds of the offering in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies as stated below. We currently anticipate that we will be able to invest all of the net proceeds in accordance with our investment objectives and policies within approximately three months after the completion of this offering. Pending such investment, it is anticipated that the proceeds will be invested in short-term investment grade securities.

THE TRUST'S INVESTMENTS

Investment Objectives and Policies

Investment Objectives. The Trust's investment objectives are to provide total return and income through a combination of current income, current gains and long-term capital appreciation. The Trust is not intended as, and you should not construe it to be, a complete investment program. There can be no assurance that the Trust's investment objectives will be achieved or that the Trust's investment program will be successful. The Trust's investment objectives may be changed by the Board without prior shareholder approval.

Investment Strategy. The Advisor may consider a variety of factors when choosing investments for the Trust, but expects to select companies with the potential for rapid and sustainable growth from the development, advancement and use of science and/or technology.

In addition, a variety of countries, including emerging market countries, and industries are likely to be represented in the Trust's portfolio.

The Trust generally will sell a stock when, in the Advisor's opinion, the stock is fully valued, there is a need to rebalance the portfolio or there is a better opportunity elsewhere.

The Trust may engage in active and frequent trading of portfolio securities to seek to achieve its investment objectives.

Investment Policies. Under normal market conditions, the Trust will invest at least 80% of its total assets in equity securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. science and technology companies in any market capitalization range, selected for their rapid and sustainable growth potential from the development, advancement and use of science and/or technology.

Science and technology companies are companies whose products, processes or services, in the Advisor's view, are being, or are expected to be, significantly benefited by the use or commercial application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries. These companies include companies that, in the Advisor's view,

Table of Contents

derive a competitive advantage by the application of scientific or technological developments or discoveries to grow their business or increase their competitive advantage, as well as companies that utilize science and/or technology as an agent of change to significantly enhance their business opportunities.

Science, technology and science- or technology-related companies may include companies operating in any industry, including, but not limited to software, internet software & services, IT services, hardware, communications equipment, semiconductors and semiconductor equipment, media, internet retail, consumer finance, life sciences tools & services, biotechnology, pharmaceuticals, energy, defense/aerospace, diversified telecom services and wireless telecom services. It is anticipated that the Trust's investments will be focused on companies within such industries that the Advisor expects will generate a majority of their revenues from the development, advancement, use or sale of new and emerging, or "next generation," science- or technology-related products, processes or services. There is no assurance, however, that any of the Trust's assets will be invested in such companies at any time. The Advisor determines, in its discretion, whether a company is a science, technology or science- or technology-related company.

The Trust may invest in companies of any market capitalization located anywhere in the world, including companies located in emerging markets. Equity securities in which the Trust may invest include common stocks, preferred stocks, convertible securities, warrants, depositary receipts, ETFs and equity interests in REITs and MLPs. The Trust may invest in shares of companies through IPOs. The Trust may also invest, without limit, in privately placed or restricted securities (including in Rule 144A securities, which are privately placed securities purchased by qualified institutional buyers), illiquid securities and securities in which no secondary market is readily available, including those of private companies. Issuers of these securities may not have a class of securities registered, and may not be subject to periodic reporting, pursuant to the Exchange Act. Under normal market conditions, the Trust currently intends to invest up to 25% of its total assets, measured at the time of investment, in such securities. The Trust expects certain of such investments to be in "pre-IPO securities," which are securities of new and early stage companies, often funded by venture capital, whose securities have not been offered to the public and are not publicly traded. Foreign securities in which the Trust may invest may be U.S. dollar-denominated or non-U.S. dollar-denominated.

The Trust may also invest in securities of other open- or closed-end investment companies, including ETFs and BDCs, subject to applicable regulatory limits, that invest primarily in securities of the types in which the Trust may invest directly. The Trust classifies its investments in such investment companies as "equity securities" for purposes of its investment policies based upon such investment companies' stated investment objectives, policies and restrictions.

The Trust will concentrate its investments in companies operating in one or more industries within the technology group of industries. See "Investment Objectives and Policies—Investment Restrictions—Fundamental Investment Restrictions" and "—Notations Regarding the Trust's Fundamental Investment Restrictions" in the SAI for additional information regarding the Trust's concentration policy.

The Trust may invest up to 20% of its total assets in equity securities issued by companies that are not science or technology companies and in debt securities issued by any issuer, including non-investment grade debt securities. The Trust's investments in non-investment grade securities and those deemed to be of similar quality are considered speculative with respect to the issuer's capacity to pay interest and repay principal and are commonly referred to as "junk" or "high yield" securities.

As part of its investment strategy, the Trust intends to employ a strategy of writing (selling) covered call options on a portion of the common stocks in its portfolio, writing (selling) other call and put options on individual common stocks, and, to a lesser extent, writing (selling) call and put index options. This options writing strategy is intended to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust's risk-adjusted returns. A substantial portion of the options written by the Trust may be OTC options.

[Table of Contents](#)

During temporary defensive periods (i.e., in response to adverse market, economic or political conditions), the Trust may invest up to 100% of its total assets in liquid, short-term investments, including high quality, short-term securities. The Trust may not achieve its investment objectives under these circumstances. See “Investment Policies and Techniques—Cash Equivalents and Short-Term Debt Securities” in the SAI. The Advisor’s determination that it is temporarily unable to follow the Trust’s investment strategy or that it is impractical to do so will generally occur only in situations in which a market disruption event has occurred and where trading in the securities selected through application of the Trust’s investment strategy is extremely limited or absent.

The Trust may invest in structured instruments (such as ELNs) for investment purposes, as an alternative or complement to its options writing strategy or for risk management or leveraging purposes.

The Trust may engage in Strategic Transactions for duration management and other risk management purposes, including to attempt to protect against possible changes in the market value of the Trust’s portfolio resulting from trends in the securities markets and changes in interest rates or to protect the Trust’s unrealized gains in the value of its portfolio securities, to facilitate the sale of portfolio securities for investment purposes, to establish a position in the securities markets as a temporary substitute for purchasing particular securities or to enhance income or gain. See “—Portfolio Contents and Techniques—Strategic Transactions and Other Management Techniques.”

The Trust may lend securities with a value of up to 33 1/3% of its total assets (including such loans) to financial institutions that provide cash or securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government as collateral.

The Trust may also engage in short sales of securities. The Trust will not make a short sale if, after giving effect to such sale, the market value of all securities sold short exceeds 25% of the value of its Managed Assets or the Trust’s aggregate short sales of a particular class of securities exceeds 25% of the outstanding securities of that class. The Trust may make short sales “against the box” without respect to such limitations. In this type of short sale, at the time of the sale the Trust owns or has the immediate and unconditional right to acquire at no additional cost the identical security.

Unless otherwise stated herein or in the SAI, the Trust’s investment policies are non-fundamental policies and may be changed by the Board without prior shareholder approval. The percentage limitations applicable to the Trust’s portfolio described in this prospectus apply only at the time of initial investment and the Trust will not be required to sell investments due to subsequent changes in the value of investments that it owns. The Trust’s policy to invest at least 80% of its total assets in equity securities issued by U.S. and non-U.S. science and technology companies in any market capitalization range may be changed by the Board; however, if this policy changes, the Trust will provide shareholders at least 60 days’ written notice before implementation of the change in compliance with SEC rules.

Portfolio Contents and Techniques

The Trust’s portfolio will be composed principally of the following investments. Additional information with respect to the Trust’s investment policies and restrictions and certain of the Trust’s portfolio investments is contained in the SAI. There is no guarantee the Trust will buy all of the types of securities or use all of the investment techniques that are described herein and in the SAI.

Equity Securities. The Trust invests in equity securities, including common stocks, preferred stocks, convertible securities, warrants, depositary receipts, ETFs and equity interests in REITs and MLPs. Common stock represents an equity ownership interest in a company. The Trust may hold or have exposure to common stocks of issuers of any size, including small and medium capitalization stocks. Because the Trust will ordinarily have exposure to common stocks, historical trends would indicate that the Trust’s portfolio and investment returns will be subject at times, and over time, to higher levels of volatility and market and issuer-specific risk than if it invested exclusively in debt securities. The Trust intends to also employ a strategy, as described below, of writing call and put options on common stocks.

Table of Contents

Options. An option on a security is a contract that gives the holder of the option, in return for a premium, the right to buy from (in the case of a call) or sell to (in the case of a put) the writer of the option the security underlying the option at a specified exercise or “strike” price. The writer of an option on a security has the obligation upon exercise of the option to deliver the underlying security upon payment of the exercise price or to pay the exercise price upon delivery of the underlying security. Certain options, known as “American style” options may be exercised at any time during the term of the option. Other options, known as “European style” options, may be exercised only on the expiration date of the option. As the writer of an option, the Trust would effectively add leverage to its portfolio because, in addition to its Managed Assets, the Trust would be subject to investment exposure on the value of the assets underlying the option.

If an option written by the Trust expires unexercised, the Trust realizes on the expiration date a capital gain equal to the premium received by the Trust at the time the option was written. If an option purchased by the Trust expires unexercised, the Trust realizes a capital loss equal to the premium paid. Prior to the earlier of exercise or expiration, an exchange-traded option may be closed out by an offsetting purchase or sale of an option of the same series (type, underlying security, exercise price and expiration). There can be no assurance, however, that a closing purchase or sale transaction can be effected when the Trust desires. The Trust may sell call or put options it has previously purchased, which could result in a net gain or loss depending on whether the amount realized on the sale is more or less than the premium and other transaction costs paid on the call or put option when purchased. The Trust will realize a capital gain from a closing purchase transaction if the cost of the closing transaction is less than the premium received from writing the option, or, if it is more, the Trust will realize a capital loss. If the premium received from a closing sale transaction is more than the premium paid to purchase the option, the Trust will realize a capital gain or, if it is less, the Trust will realize a capital loss. Net gains from the Trust’s options strategy will be short-term capital gains which, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, will constitute net investment company taxable income.

Call Options. The Trust intends to follow a call options writing strategy intended to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust’s risk-adjusted returns. The strategy involves writing both covered and other call options. A call option written by the Trust on a security is considered a covered call option where the Trust owns the security underlying the call option. Unlike a written covered call option, other written options will not provide the Trust with any potential appreciation on an underlying security to offset any loss the Trust may experience if the option is exercised.

Over time, as the Trust writes covered call options over more of its portfolio, its ability to benefit from capital appreciation on the underlying securities may become more limited, and the Trust will lose money to the extent that it writes covered call options and the securities on which it writes these options appreciate above the exercise price of the option. Therefore, over time, the Advisor may choose to decrease its use of a covered call options writing strategy to the extent that it may negatively impact the Trust’s ability to benefit from capital appreciation.

For any written call option where the Trust does not own the underlying security, the Trust may have an absolute and immediate right to acquire that security upon conversion or exchange of other securities held by the Trust without additional cash consideration (or, if additional cash consideration is required, cash or liquid securities in such amount are segregated on the Trust’s books) or the Trust may hold a call on the same security where the exercise price of the call held is (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written, or (ii) greater than the exercise price of the call written, provided cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the difference is segregated on the Trust’s books.

The standard contract size for a single option is 100 shares of the common stock. There are four items needed to identify any option: (1) the underlying security, (2) the expiration month, (3) the strike price and (4) the type (call or put). For example, ten XYZ Co. October 40 call options provide the right to purchase 1,000 shares of XYZ Co. on or before October at \$40.00 per share. A call option whose strike price is above the current price of the underlying stock is called “out-of-the-money.” Most of the options that will be sold by the

Table of Contents

Trust are expected to be out-of-the-money, allowing for potential appreciation in addition to the proceeds from the sale of the option. An option whose strike price is below the current price of the underlying stock is called “in-the-money” and could be sold by the Trust as a defensive measure to protect against a possible decline in the underlying stock.

The following is a conceptual example of a covered call transaction, making the following assumptions: (1) a common stock currently trading at \$37.15 per share; (2) a six-month call option is written with a strike price of \$40.00 (i.e., 7.7% higher than the current market price); and (3) the writer receives \$2.45 (or 6.6%) of the common stock’s value as a premium. This example is not meant to represent the performance of any actual common stock, option contract or the Trust itself and does not reflect any transaction costs of entering into or closing out the option position. Under this scenario, before giving effect to any change in the price of the stock, the covered call writer receives the premium, representing 6.6% of the common stock’s value, regardless of the stock’s performance over the six-month period until option expiration. If the stock remains unchanged, the option will expire and there would be a 6.6% return for the 6-month period. If the stock were to decline in price by 6.6%, the strategy would “break-even” thus offering no gain or loss. If the stock were to climb to a price of \$40.00 or above, the option would be exercised and the stock would return 7.7% coupled with the option premium of 6.6% for a total return of 14.3%. Under this scenario, the investor would not benefit from any appreciation of the stock above \$40.00, and thus be limited to a 14.3% total return. The premium from writing the covered call option serves to offset some of the unrealized loss on the stock in the event that the price of the stock declines, but if the stock were to decline more than 6.6% under this scenario, the investor’s downside protection is eliminated and the stock could eventually become worthless.

For conventional listed call options, the option’s expiration date can be up to nine months from the date the call options are first listed for trading. Longer-term call options can have expiration dates up to three years from the date of listing. It is anticipated that, under certain circumstances when deemed at the Advisor’s discretion to be in the best interest of the Trust, options that are written against Trust stock holdings will be repurchased prior to the option’s expiration date, generating a gain or loss in the options. If the options were not to be repurchased, the option holder would exercise their rights and buy the stock from the Trust at the strike price if the stock traded at a higher price than the strike price. In general, when deemed at the Advisor’s discretion to be in the best interests of the Trust, the Trust may enter into transactions, including closing transactions, that would allow it to continue to hold its common stocks rather than allowing them to be called away by the option holders.

Put Options. Put options are contracts that give the holder of the option, in return for a premium, the right to sell to the writer of the option the security underlying the option at a specified exercise price at any time during the term of the option. Put option strategies may produce a higher return than covered call writing, but may involve a higher degree of risk and potential volatility.

When writing a put option on a security, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the option exercise price or the Trust may hold a put option on the same security as the put written where the exercise price of the put held is (i) equal to or greater than the exercise price of the put written, or (ii) less than the exercise price of the put written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust’s books. Unlike a covered call option, a put option written in this manner will not provide the Trust with any appreciation to offset any loss the Trust experiences if the put option is exercised.

The following is a conceptual example of a put transaction, making the following assumptions: (1) a common stock currently trading at \$37.15 per share; (2) a six-month put option written with a strike price of \$35.00 (i.e., 94.21% of the current market price); and (3) the writer receives \$1.10 or 2.96% of the common stock’s value as a premium. This example is not meant to represent the performance of any actual common stock, option contract or the Trust itself and does not reflect any transaction costs of entering into or closing out the option position. Under this scenario, before giving effect to any change in the price of the stock, the put writer receives the premium, representing 2.96% of the common stock’s value, regardless of the stock’s performance

Table of Contents

over the six-month period until the option expires. If the stock remains unchanged, appreciates in value or declines less than 5.79% in value, the option will expire and there would be a 2.96% return for the six-month period. If the stock were to decline by 5.79% or more, the Trust would lose an amount equal to the amount by which the stock's price declined minus the premium paid to the Trust. The stock's price could lose its entire value, in which case the Trust would lose \$33.90 (\$35.00 minus \$1.10).

Options on Indices. The Trust may write index call and put options. Because "index options" includes both options on indices of securities and sectors of securities, all types of index options generally have similar characteristics. Index options differ from options on individual securities because (i) the exercise of an index option requires cash payments and does not involve the actual purchase or sale of securities, (ii) the holder of an index option has the right to receive cash upon exercise of the option if the level of the index upon which the option is based is greater, in the case of a call, or less, in the case of a put, than the exercise price of the option and (iii) index options reflect price fluctuations in a group of securities or segments of the securities market rather than price fluctuations in a single security.

As the writer of an index call or put option, the Trust receives cash (the premium) from the purchaser. The purchaser of an index call option has the right to any appreciation in the value of the index over a fixed price (the exercise price) on or before a certain date in the future (the expiration date). The purchaser of an index put option has the right to any depreciation in the value of the index below a fixed price (the exercise price) on or before a certain date in the future (the expiration date). The Trust, in effect, agrees to sell the potential appreciation (in the case of a call) or accept the potential depreciation (in the case of a put) in the value of the relevant index in exchange for the premium. If, at or before expiration, the purchaser exercises the call or put option written by the Trust, the Trust will pay the purchaser the difference between the cash value of the index and the exercise price of the index option. The premium, the exercise price and the market value of the index determine the gain or loss realized by the Trust as the writer of the index call or put option.

The Trust may execute a closing purchase transaction with respect to an index option it has sold and write another option (with either a different exercise price or expiration date or both). The Trust's objective in entering into such a closing transaction will be to optimize net index option premiums. The cost of a closing transaction may reduce the net index option premiums realized from writing the index option.

When writing an index put option, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the exercise price, or the Trust may hold a put on the same basket of securities as the put written where the exercise price of the put held is (i) equal to or more than the exercise price of the put written, or (ii) less than the exercise price of the put written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust's books. When writing an index call option, the Trust will segregate on its books cash or liquid securities in an amount equal to the excess of the value of the applicable basket of securities over the exercise price, or the Trust may hold a call on the same basket of securities as the call written where the exercise price of the call held is (i) equal to or less than the exercise price of the call written, or (ii) greater than the exercise price of the call written, provided an amount equal to the difference in cash or liquid securities is segregated on the Trust's books.

Limitation on Options Writing Strategy. The Trust may write put and call options, the notional amount of which would be approximately 10% to 40% of the Trust's total assets, although this percentage may vary from time to time with market conditions. Under current market conditions, the Trust anticipates initially writing put and call options, the notional amount of which would be approximately 25% of the Trust's total assets. The Trust generally writes options that are "out of the money" – in other words, the strike price of a written call option will be greater than the market price of the underlying security on the date that the option is written, or, for a written put option, less than the market price of the underlying security on the date that the option is written; however, the Trust may also write "in the money" options for defensive or other purposes.

Table of Contents

The number of put and call options on securities the Trust can write is limited by the total assets the Trust holds, and further limited by the fact that all options represent 100 share lots of the underlying common stock. The Trust's exchange-listed option transactions will be subject to limitations established by each of the exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities on which such options are traded. These limitations govern the maximum number of options in each class which may be written or purchased by a single investor or group of investors acting in concert, regardless of whether the options are written or purchased on the same or different exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities or are held or written in one or more accounts or through one or more brokers. Thus, the number of options which the Trust may write or purchase may be affected by options written or purchased by other investment advisory clients of the Advisor. An exchange, board of trade or other trading facility may order the liquidation of positions found to be in excess of these limits, and it may impose certain other sanctions.

Preferred Securities. The Trust may invest in preferred securities. There are two basic types of preferred securities. The first type, sometimes referred to as traditional preferred securities, consists of preferred stock issued by an entity taxable as a corporation. The second type, sometimes referred to as trust preferred securities, are usually issued by a trust or limited partnership and represent preferred interests in deeply subordinated debt instruments issued by the corporation for whose benefit the trust or partnership was established.

Traditional Preferred Securities. Traditional preferred securities generally pay fixed or adjustable rate dividends to investors and generally have a "preference" over common stock in the payment of dividends and the liquidation of a company's assets. This means that a company must pay dividends on preferred stock before paying any dividends on its common stock. In order to be payable, distributions on such preferred securities must be declared by the issuer's board of directors. Income payments on typical preferred securities currently outstanding are cumulative, causing dividends and distributions to accumulate even if not declared by the board of directors or otherwise made payable. In such a case, all accumulated dividends must be paid before any dividend on the common stock can be paid. However, some traditional preferred stocks are non-cumulative, in which case dividends do not accumulate and need not ever be paid. A portion of the portfolio may include investments in non-cumulative preferred securities, whereby the issuer does not have an obligation to make up any arrearages to its shareholders. Should an issuer of a non-cumulative preferred stock held by the Trust determine not to pay dividends on such stock, the amount of dividends the Trust pays may be adversely affected. There is no assurance that dividends or distributions on the preferred securities in which the Trust invests will be declared or otherwise made payable.

Preferred stockholders usually have no right to vote for corporate directors or on other matters. Shares of preferred stock have a liquidation value that generally equals the original purchase price at the date of issuance. The market value of preferred securities may be affected by favorable and unfavorable changes impacting companies in the utilities and financial services sectors, which are prominent issuers of preferred securities, and by actual and anticipated changes in tax laws, such as changes in corporate income tax rates or the "Dividends Received Deduction." Because the claim on an issuer's earnings represented by preferred securities may become onerous when interest rates fall below the rate payable on such securities, the issuer may redeem the securities. Thus, in declining interest rate environments in particular, the Trust's holdings, if any, of higher rate-paying fixed rate preferred securities may be reduced and the Trust may be unable to acquire securities of comparable credit quality paying comparable rates with the redemption proceeds.

Trust Preferred Securities. Trust preferred securities are typically issued by corporations, generally in the form of interest-bearing notes with preferred security characteristics, or by an affiliated business trust of a corporation, generally in the form of beneficial interests in subordinated debentures or similarly structured securities. The trust preferred securities market consists of both fixed and adjustable coupon rate securities that are either perpetual in nature or have stated maturity dates.

Trust preferred securities are typically junior and fully subordinated liabilities of an issuer or the beneficiary of a guarantee that is junior and fully subordinated to the other liabilities of the guarantor. In addition, trust

[Table of Contents](#)

preferred securities typically permit an issuer to defer the payment of income for eighteen months or more without triggering an event of default. Generally, the deferral period is five years or more. Because of their subordinated position in the capital structure of an issuer, the ability to defer payments for extended periods of time without default consequences to the issuer, and certain other features (such as restrictions on common dividend payments by the issuer or ultimate guarantor when full cumulative payments on the trust preferred securities have not been made), these trust preferred securities are often treated as close substitutes for traditional preferred securities, both by issuers and investors. Trust preferred securities have many of the key characteristics of equity due to their subordinated position in an issuer's capital structure and because their quality and value are heavily dependent on the profitability of the issuer rather than on any legal claims to specific assets or cash flows.

Convertible Securities. A convertible security is a bond, debenture, note, preferred stock or other security that may be converted into or exchanged for a prescribed amount of common stock or other equity security of the same or a different issuer within a particular period of time at a specified price or formula. A convertible security entitles the holder to receive interest paid or accrued on debt or the dividend paid on preferred stock until the convertible security matures or is redeemed, converted or exchanged. Before conversion, convertible securities have characteristics similar to nonconvertible income securities in that they ordinarily provide a stable stream of income with generally higher yields than those of common stocks of the same or similar issuers, but lower yields than comparable nonconvertible securities. The value of a convertible security is influenced by changes in interest rates, with investment value declining as interest rates increase and increasing as interest rates decline. The credit standing of the issuer and other factors also may have an effect on the convertible security's investment value. Convertible securities rank senior to common stock in a corporation's capital structure but are usually subordinated to comparable nonconvertible securities. Convertible securities may be subject to redemption at the option of the issuer at a price established in the convertible security's governing instrument.

A "synthetic" or "manufactured" convertible security may be created by the Trust or by a third party by combining separate securities that possess the two principal characteristics of a traditional convertible security: an income producing component and a convertible component. The income-producing component is achieved by investing in non-convertible, income-producing securities such as bonds, preferred stocks and money market instruments. The convertible component is achieved by investing in securities or instruments such as warrants or options to buy common stock at a certain exercise price, or options on a stock index. Unlike a traditional convertible security, which is a single security having a single market value, a synthetic convertible comprises two or more separate securities, each with its own market value. Because the "market value" of a synthetic convertible security is the sum of the values of its income-producing component and its convertible component, the value of a synthetic convertible security may respond differently to market fluctuations than a traditional convertible security. The Trust also may purchase synthetic convertible securities created by other parties, including convertible structured notes. Convertible structured notes are income-producing debentures linked to equity. Convertible structured notes have the attributes of a convertible security; however, the issuer of the convertible note (typically an investment bank), rather than the issuer of the underlying common stock into which the note is convertible, assumes credit risk associated with the underlying investment and the Trust in turn assumes credit risk associated with the issuer of the convertible note.

Warrants. Warrants are instruments issued by corporations enabling the owners to subscribe to and purchase a specified number of shares of the corporation at a specified price during a specified period of time. Warrants normally have a short life span to expiration. The purchase of warrants involves the risk that the Trust could lose the purchase value of a warrant if the right to subscribe to additional shares is not exercised prior to the warrants' expiration. Also, the purchase of warrants involves the risk that the effective price paid for the warrant added to the subscription price of the related security may exceed the subscribed security's market price such as when there is no movement in the level of the underlying security.

Depositary Receipts. The Trust may invest in sponsored and unsponsored ADRs, EDRs, GDRs and other similar global instruments. ADRs typically are issued by a U.S. bank or trust company and evidence ownership

Table of Contents

of underlying securities issued by a non-U.S. corporation. EDRs, which are sometimes referred to as Continental Depositary Receipts, are receipts issued in Europe, typically by non-U.S. banks and trust companies, that evidence ownership of either non-U.S. or domestic underlying securities. GDRs are depositary receipts structured like global debt issues to facilitate trading on an international basis.

Non-U.S. Securities. The Trust may invest without limit in Non-U.S. Securities. These securities may be U.S. dollar-denominated or non-U.S. dollar-denominated. Some Non-U.S. Securities may be less liquid and more volatile than securities of comparable U.S. issuers. Similarly, there is less volume and liquidity in most foreign securities markets than in the United States and, at times, greater price volatility than in the United States. Because evidence of ownership of such securities usually is held outside the United States, the Trust will be subject to additional risks if it invests in Non-U.S. Securities, which include adverse political and economic developments, seizure or nationalization of foreign deposits and adoption of governmental restrictions which might adversely affect or restrict the payment of principal and interest or dividends on the foreign securities to investors located outside the country of the issuer, whether from currency blockage or otherwise. Non-U.S. Securities may trade on days when the common shares are not priced or traded.

Emerging Markets Investments. The Trust may invest without limitation in securities of issuers located in emerging market countries, including securities denominated in currencies of emerging market countries. Emerging market countries generally include every nation in the world except the United States, Canada, Japan, Australia, New Zealand and most countries located in Western Europe. These issuers may be subject to risks that do not apply to issuers in larger, more developed countries. These risks are more pronounced to the extent the Trust invests significantly in one country. Less information about emerging market issuers or markets may be available due to less rigorous disclosure and accounting standards or regulatory practices. Emerging markets are smaller, less liquid and more volatile than U.S. markets. In a changing market, the Advisor may not be able to sell the Trust's portfolio securities in amounts and at prices it considers reasonable. The U.S. dollar may appreciate against non-U.S. currencies or an emerging market government may impose restrictions on currency conversion or trading. The economies of emerging market countries may grow at a slower rate than expected or may experience a downturn or recession. Economic, political and social developments may adversely affect emerging market countries and their securities markets.

Restricted and Illiquid Investments. The Trust may invest without limitation in illiquid or less liquid investments or investments in which no secondary market is readily available or which are otherwise illiquid, including private placement securities. Liquidity of an investment relates to the ability to dispose easily of the investment and the price to be obtained upon disposition of the investment, which may be less than would be obtained for a comparable more liquid investment. "Illiquid investments" are investments which cannot be sold within seven days in the ordinary course of business at approximately the value used by the Trust in determining its NAV. Illiquid investments may trade at a discount from comparable, more liquid investments. Illiquid investments are subject to legal or contractual restrictions on disposition or lack an established secondary trading market. Investment of the Trust's assets in illiquid investments may restrict the ability of the Trust to dispose of its investments in a timely fashion and for a fair price as well as its ability to take advantage of market opportunities.

Private Company Investments. At any given time the Trust anticipates making investments in carefully selected private company investments that the Trust may need to hold for several years or longer. The Trust expects certain of such investments to be in "pre-IPO securities," which are securities of new and early stage companies, often funded by venture capital, whose securities have not been offered to the public and are not publicly traded. The Trust may invest in equity securities or debt securities, including debt securities issued with warrants to purchase equity securities or that are convertible into equity securities, of private companies. The Trust may enter into private company investments identified by the Advisor or may co-invest in private company investment opportunities owned or identified by other third party investors, such as private equity firms, with which neither the Trust nor the Advisor is affiliated. However, the Trust will not invest in private equity funds or other privately offered pooled investment funds.

Table of Contents

Other Investment Companies. The Trust may invest in securities of other investment companies (including ETFs and BDCs), subject to applicable regulatory limits, that invest primarily in securities of the types in which the Trust may invest directly. As a shareholder in an investment company, the Trust will bear its ratable share of that investment company's expenses and will remain subject to payment of the Trust's advisory and other fees and expenses with respect to assets so invested. Holders of common shares will therefore be subject to duplicative expenses to the extent the Trust invests in other investment companies. The Advisor will take expenses into account when evaluating the investment merits of an investment in an investment company relative to available equity and/or fixed-income securities investments. In addition, the securities of other investment companies may be leveraged and will therefore be subject to the same leverage risks to which the Trust may be subject to the extent it employs a leverage strategy. As described in this prospectus in the sections entitled "Risks" and "Leverage," the NAV and market value of leveraged shares will be more volatile and the yield to shareholders will tend to fluctuate more than the yield generated by unleveraged shares. Investment companies may have investment policies that differ from those of the Trust. In addition, to the extent the Trust invests in other investment companies, the Trust will be dependent upon the investment and research abilities of persons other than the Advisor.

The Trust may invest in ETFs, which are investment companies that typically aim to track or replicate a desired index, such as a sector, market or global segment. ETFs are typically passively managed and their shares are traded on a national exchange or The NASDAQ Stock Market, Inc. ETFs do not sell individual shares directly to investors and only issue their shares in large blocks known as "creation units." The investor purchasing a creation unit may sell the individual shares on a secondary market. Therefore, the liquidity of ETFs depends on the adequacy of the secondary market. There can be no assurance that an ETF's investment objective will be achieved, as ETFs based on an index may not replicate and maintain exactly the composition and relative weightings of securities in the index. ETFs are subject to the risks of investing in the underlying securities. The Trust, as a holder of the securities of the ETF, will bear its pro rata portion of the ETF's expenses, including advisory fees. These expenses are in addition to the direct expenses of the Trust's own operations.

REITs. REITs are subject to certain risks which differ from an investment in common stocks. REITs are financial vehicles that pool investors' capital to purchase or finance real estate. REITs may concentrate their investments in specific geographic areas or in specific property types (e.g., hotels, shopping malls, residential complexes and office buildings). The market value of REIT shares and the ability of REITs to distribute income may be adversely affected by several factors, including rising interest rates, changes in the national, state and local economic climate and real estate conditions, perceptions of prospective tenants of the safety, convenience and attractiveness of the properties, the ability of the owners to provide adequate management, maintenance and insurance, the cost of complying with the Americans with Disabilities Act, increased competition from new properties, the impact of present or future environmental legislation and compliance with environmental laws, changes in real estate taxes and other operating expenses, adverse changes in governmental rules and fiscal policies, adverse changes in zoning laws and other factors beyond the control of the REIT issuers. In addition, distributions received by the Trust from REITs may consist of dividends, capital gains and/or return of capital. As REITs generally pay a higher rate of dividends (on a pre-tax basis) than operating companies, to the extent application of the Trust's investment strategy results in the Trust investing in REIT shares, the percentage of the Trust's dividend income received from REIT shares will likely exceed the percentage of the Trust's portfolio which is comprised of REIT shares. There are three general categories of REITs: equity REITs, mortgage REITs and hybrid REITs. Equity REITs invest primarily in direct fee ownership or leasehold ownership of real property; they derive most of their income from rents. Mortgage REITs invest mostly in mortgages on real estate, which may secure construction, development or long-term loans, and the main source of their income is mortgage interest payments. Hybrid REITs hold both ownership and mortgage interests in real estate.

MLPs. MLPs are limited partnerships or limited liability companies taxable as partnerships. MLPs may derive income and gains from the exploration, development, mining or production, processing, refining, transportation (including pipelines transporting gas, oil, or products thereof), or the marketing of any mineral or natural resources. The Trust may, however, invest in MLP entities in any sector of the economy. MLPs generally

[Table of Contents](#)

have two classes of owners, the general partner and limited partners. When investing in an MLP, the Trust generally purchases publicly traded common units issued to limited partners of the MLP. The general partner is typically owned by a major energy company, an investment fund, the direct management of the MLP or is an entity owned by one or more of such parties. The general partner may be structured as a private or publicly traded corporation or other entity. The general partner typically controls the operations and management of the MLP through an up to 2% equity interest in the MLP plus, in many cases, ownership of common units and subordinated units. Limited partners own the remainder of the partnership, through ownership of common units, and have a limited role in the partnership's operations and management. The limited partners also receive cash distributions.

Corporate Bonds. Corporate bonds are debt obligations issued by corporations. Corporate bonds may be either secured or unsecured. Collateral used for secured debt includes real property, machinery, equipment, accounts receivable, stocks, bonds or notes. If a bond is unsecured, it is known as a debenture. Bondholders, as creditors, have a prior legal claim over common and preferred stockholders as to both income and assets of the corporation for the principal and interest due them and may have a prior claim over other creditors if liens or mortgages are involved. Interest on corporate bonds may be fixed or floating, or the bonds may be zero coupons. Interest on corporate bonds is typically paid semi-annually and is fully taxable to the bondholder. Corporate bonds contain elements of both interest rate risk and credit risk. The market value of a corporate bond generally may be expected to rise and fall inversely with interest rates and may also be affected by the credit rating of the corporation, the corporation's performance and perceptions of the corporation in the marketplace. Corporate bonds usually yield more than government or agency bonds due to the presence of credit risk.

High Yield Securities. Subject to its investment policies, the Trust may invest in securities rated, at the time of investment, below investment grade quality such as those rated Ba or below by Moody's Investor's Service Inc. ("Moody's"), BB or below by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") or Fitch Ratings, Inc. ("Fitch"), or securities comparably rated by other rating agencies or in unrated securities determined by the Advisor to be of comparable quality. Such securities, sometimes referred to as "high yield" or "junk" bonds, are predominantly speculative with respect to the capacity to pay interest and repay principal in accordance with the terms of the security and generally involve greater price volatility than securities in higher rating categories. Often the protection of interest and principal payments with respect to such securities may be very moderate and issuers of such securities face major ongoing uncertainties or exposure to adverse business, financial or economic conditions which could lead to inadequate capacity to meet timely interest and principal payments.

Lower grade securities, though high yielding, are characterized by high risk. They may be subject to certain risks with respect to the issuing entity and to greater market fluctuations than certain lower yielding, higher rated securities. The secondary market for lower grade securities may be less liquid than that of higher rated securities. Adverse conditions could make it difficult at times for the Trust to sell certain securities or could result in lower prices than those used in calculating the Trust's NAV.

The prices of fixed-income securities generally are inversely related to interest rate changes; however, the price volatility caused by fluctuating interest rates of securities also is inversely related to the coupons of such securities. Accordingly, below investment grade securities may be relatively less sensitive to interest rate changes than higher quality securities of comparable maturity because of their higher coupon. The investor receives this higher coupon in return for bearing greater credit risk. The higher credit risk associated with below investment grade securities potentially can have a greater effect on the value of such securities than may be the case with higher quality issues of comparable maturity.

Lower grade securities may be particularly susceptible to economic downturns. It is likely that an economic recession could severely disrupt the market for such securities and may have an adverse impact on the value of such securities. In addition, it is likely that any such economic downturn could adversely affect the ability of the issuers of such securities to repay principal and pay interest thereon and increase the incidence of default for such securities.

Table of Contents

The ratings of Moody's, S&P, Fitch and other rating agencies represent their opinions as to the quality of the obligations which they undertake to rate. Ratings are relative and subjective and, although ratings may be useful in evaluating the safety of interest and principal payments, they do not evaluate the market value risk of such obligations. Although these ratings may be an initial criterion for selection of portfolio investments, the Advisor also will independently evaluate these securities and the ability of the issuers of such securities to pay interest and principal. To the extent that the Trust invests in lower grade securities that have not been rated by a rating agency, the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives will be more dependent on the Advisor's credit analysis than would be the case when the Trust invests in rated securities.

Distressed and Defaulted Securities. The Trust may invest in the securities of financially distressed and bankrupt issuers, including debt obligations that are in covenant or payment default. Such investments generally trade significantly below par and are considered speculative. The repayment of defaulted obligations is subject to significant uncertainties. Defaulted obligations might be repaid only after lengthy workout or bankruptcy proceedings, during which the issuer might not make any interest or other payments. Typically such workout or bankruptcy proceedings result in only partial recovery of cash payments or an exchange of the defaulted obligation for other debt or equity securities of the issuer or its affiliates, which may in turn be illiquid or speculative.

U.S. Government Debt Securities. The Trust may invest in debt securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. Government, its agencies or instrumentalities, including U.S. Treasury obligations, which differ in their interest rates, maturities and times of issuance. Such obligations include U.S. Treasury bills (maturity of one year or less), U.S. Treasury notes (maturity of one to ten years) and U.S. Treasury bonds (generally maturities of greater than ten years), including the principal components or the interest components issued by the U.S. Government under the separate trading of registered interest and principal securities program (i.e., "STRIPS"), all of which are backed by the full faith and credit of the United States.

Structured Instruments. The Trust may use structured instruments for investment purposes, for risk management purposes, such as to reduce the duration and interest rate sensitivity of the Trust's portfolio, for leveraging purposes and, with respect to certain structured instruments, as an alternative or complement to its options writing strategy. While structured instruments may offer the potential for a favorable rate of return from time to time, they also entail certain risks. Structured instruments may be less liquid than other securities and the price of structured instruments may be more volatile. In some cases, depending on the terms of the embedded index, a structured instrument may provide that the principal and/or interest payments may be adjusted below zero. Structured instruments also may involve significant credit risk and risk of default by the counterparty. Structured instruments may also be illiquid. Like other sophisticated strategies, the Trust's use of structured instruments may not work as intended.

Structured Notes. The Trust may invest in "structured" notes and other related instruments, which are privately negotiated debt obligations in which the principal and/or interest is determined by reference to the performance of a benchmark asset, market or interest rate (an "embedded index"), such as selected securities, an index of securities or specified interest rates, or the differential performance of two assets or markets. Structured instruments may be issued by corporations, including banks, as well as by governmental agencies. Structured instruments frequently are assembled in the form of medium-term notes, but a variety of forms are available and may be used in particular circumstances. The terms of such structured instruments normally provide that their principal and/or interest payments are to be adjusted upwards or downwards (but ordinarily not below zero) to reflect changes in the embedded index while the structured instruments are outstanding. As a result, the interest and/or principal payments that may be made on a structured product may vary widely, depending on a variety of factors, including the volatility of the embedded index and the effect of changes in the embedded index on principal and/or interest payments. The rate of return on structured notes may be determined by applying a multiplier to the performance or differential performance of the referenced index(es) or other asset(s). Application of a multiplier involves leverage that will serve to magnify the potential for gain and the risk of loss.

Table of Contents

Equity-Linked Notes. ELNs are hybrid securities with characteristics of both fixed-income and equity securities. An ELN is a debt instrument, usually a bond, that pays interest based upon the performance of an underlying equity, which can be a single stock, basket of stocks or an equity index. Instead of paying a predetermined coupon, ELNs link the interest payment to the performance of a particular equity market index or basket of stocks or commodities. The interest payment is typically based on the percentage increase in an index from a predetermined level, but alternatively may be based on a decrease in the index. The interest payment may in some cases be leveraged so that, in percentage terms, it exceeds the relative performance of the market. ELNs generally are subject to the risks associated with the securities of equity issuers, default risk and counterparty risk.

In particular, the Trust may invest in ELNs as an alternative or complement to its options writing strategy. The features of ELNs described above closely replicate the income and return stream associated with single stock covered call options, and permit the Trust to receive interest income instead of the capital gains treatment that results from the implementation of its options strategy, which the Trust believes may be advantageous in certain circumstances.

Credit Linked Notes. A credit-linked note (“CLN”) is a derivative instrument. It is a synthetic obligation between two or more parties where the payment of principal and/or interest is based on the performance of some obligation (a reference obligation). In addition to the credit risk of the reference obligations and interest rate risk, the buyer/seller of the CLN is subject to counterparty risk.

Event-Linked Securities. The Trust may obtain event-linked exposure by investing in “event-linked bonds” or “event-linked swaps” or by implementing “event-linked strategies.” Event-linked exposure results in gains or losses that typically are contingent upon, or formulaically related to, defined trigger events. Examples of trigger events include hurricanes, earthquakes, weather-related phenomena or statistics relating to such events. Some event-linked bonds are commonly referred to as “catastrophe bonds.” If a trigger event occurs, the Trust may lose a portion of or its entire principal invested in the bond or the entire notional amount of a swap. Event-linked exposure often provides for an extension of maturity to process and audit loss claims when a trigger event has, or possibly has, occurred. An extension of maturity may increase volatility. Event-linked exposure may also expose the Trust to certain other risks including credit risk, counterparty risk, adverse regulatory or jurisdictional interpretations and adverse tax consequences. Event-linked exposures may also be subject to illiquidity risk.

Strategic Transactions and Other Management Techniques. In addition to the options strategy discussed above, the Trust may use a variety of other investment management techniques and instruments. The Trust may purchase and sell futures contracts, enter into various interest rate transactions such as swaps, caps, floors or collars, currency transactions such as currency forward contracts, currency futures contracts, currency swaps or options on currency or currency futures and swap contracts (including, but not limited to, credit default swaps) and may purchase and sell exchange-listed and OTC put and call options on securities and swap contracts, financial indices and futures contracts and use other derivative instruments or management techniques. These Strategic Transactions may be used for duration management and other risk management purposes, including to attempt to protect against possible changes in the market value of the Trust’s portfolio resulting from trends in the securities markets and changes in interest rates or to protect the Trust’s unrealized gains in the value of its portfolio securities, to facilitate the sale of portfolio securities for investment purposes, to establish a position in the securities markets as a temporary substitute for purchasing particular securities or to enhance income or gain. There is no particular strategy that requires use of one technique rather than another as the decision to use any particular strategy or instrument is a function of market conditions and the composition of the portfolio. The use of Strategic Transactions to enhance current income may be particularly speculative. The ability of the Trust to use Strategic Transactions successfully will depend on the Advisor’s ability to predict pertinent market movements as well as sufficient correlation among the instruments, which cannot be assured. The use of Strategic Transactions may result in losses greater than if they had not been used, may require the Trust to sell or purchase portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than current market values, may limit the amount of appreciation the Trust can realize on an investment or may cause the Trust to hold a security that it

[Table of Contents](#)

might otherwise sell. Inasmuch as any obligations of the Trust that arise from the use of Strategic Transactions will be covered by segregated or earmarked liquid assets or offsetting transactions, the Trust and the Advisor believe such obligations do not constitute senior securities and, accordingly, will not treat such transactions as being subject to its borrowing restrictions. See “Leverage.” Additionally, segregated or earmarked liquid assets, amounts paid by the Trust as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to Strategic Transactions are not otherwise available to the Trust for investment purposes. The SAI contains further information about the characteristics, risks and possible benefits of Strategic Transactions and the Trust’s other policies and limitations (which are not fundamental policies) relating to Strategic Transactions. Certain provisions of the Code may restrict or affect the ability of the Trust to engage in Strategic Transactions. In addition, the use of certain Strategic Transactions may give rise to taxable income and have certain other consequences. See “Risks—Strategic Transactions and Derivatives Risk.”

Foreign Currency Transactions. The Trust’s common shares are priced in U.S. dollars and the distributions paid by the Trust to common shareholders are paid in U.S. dollars. However, a portion of the Trust’s assets may be denominated in non-U.S. currencies and the income received by the Trust from such securities will be paid in non-U.S. currencies. The Trust also may invest in or gain exposure to non-U.S. currencies for investment or hedging purposes. The Trust’s investments in securities that trade in, or receive revenues in, non-U.S. currencies will be subject to currency risk, which is the risk that fluctuations in the exchange rates between the U.S. dollar and foreign currencies may negatively affect an investment. The Trust may (but is not required to) hedge some or all of its exposure to non-U.S. currencies through the use of derivative strategies, including forward foreign currency exchange contracts, foreign currency futures contracts and options on foreign currencies and foreign currency futures. Suitable hedging transactions may not be available in all circumstances and there can be no assurance that the Trust will engage in such transactions at any given time or from time to time when they would be beneficial. Although the Trust has the flexibility to engage in such transactions, the Advisor may determine not to do so or to do so only in unusual circumstances or market conditions. These transactions may not be successful and may eliminate any chance for the Trust to benefit from favorable fluctuations in relevant foreign currencies. The Trust may also use derivatives contracts for purposes of increasing exposure to a foreign currency or to shift exposure to foreign currency fluctuations from one currency to another.

Interest Rate Transactions. The Trust may enter into interest rate swaps and purchase or sell interest rate caps and floors. The Trust expects to enter into these transactions primarily to preserve a return or spread on a particular investment or portion of its portfolio, as a duration management technique, to protect against any increase in the price of securities the Trust anticipates purchasing at a later date and/or to hedge against increases in the Trust’s costs associated with its leverage strategy. The Trust will ordinarily use these transactions as a hedge or for duration and risk management although it is permitted to enter into them to enhance income or gain. Interest rate swaps involve the exchange by the Trust with another party of their respective commitments to pay or receive interest (e.g., an exchange of floating rate payments for fixed rate payments with respect to a notional amount of principal). The purchase of an interest rate cap entitles the purchaser, to the extent that the level of a specified interest rate exceeds a predetermined interest rate (i.e., the strike price), to receive payments of interest on a notional principal amount from the party selling such interest rate cap. The purchase of an interest rate floor entitles the purchaser, to the extent that the level of a specified interest rate falls below a predetermined interest rate (i.e., the strike price), to receive payments of interest on a notional principal amount from the party selling such interest rate floor.

For example, if the Trust holds a debt instrument with an interest rate that is reset only once each year, it may swap the right to receive interest at this fixed rate for the right to receive interest at a rate that is reset every week. This would enable the Trust to offset a decline in the value of the debt instrument due to rising interest rates but would also limit its ability to benefit from falling interest rates. Conversely, if the Trust holds a debt instrument with an interest rate that is reset every week and it would like to lock in what it believes to be a high interest rate for one year, it may swap the right to receive interest at this variable weekly rate for the right to receive interest at a rate that is fixed for one year. Such a swap would protect the Trust from a reduction in yield

[Table of Contents](#)

due to falling interest rates and may permit the Trust to enhance its income through the positive differential between one week and one year interest rates, but would preclude it from taking full advantage of rising interest rates.

The Trust may hedge both its assets and liabilities through interest rate swaps, caps and floors. Usually, payments with respect to interest rate swaps will be made on a net basis (i.e., the two payment streams are netted out) with the Trust receiving or paying, as the case may be, only the net amount of the two payments on the payment dates. The Trust will accrue the net amount of the excess, if any, of the Trust's obligations over its entitlements with respect to each interest rate swap on a daily basis and will segregate with a custodian or designate on its books and records an amount of cash or liquid assets having an aggregate NAV at all times at least equal to the accrued excess. If there is a default by the other party to an uncleared interest rate swap transaction, generally the Trust will have contractual remedies pursuant to the agreements related to the transaction. With respect to interest rate swap transactions cleared through a central clearing counterparty, a clearing organization will be substituted for the counterparty and will guaranty the parties' performance under the swap agreement. However, there can be no assurance that the clearing organization will satisfy its obligation to the Trust or that the Trust would be able to recover the full amount of assets deposited on its behalf with the clearing organization in the event of the default by the clearing organization or the Trust's clearing broker. Certain U.S. federal income tax requirements may limit the Trust's ability to engage in interest rate swaps. Distributions attributable to transactions in interest rate swaps generally will be taxable as ordinary income to shareholders.

Credit Default Swaps. Subject to its investment policies, the Trust may enter into credit default swap agreements without limit. The credit default swap agreement may have as reference obligations one or more securities that are not currently held by the Trust. The protection "buyer" in a credit default contract may be obligated to pay the protection "seller" an upfront or a periodic stream of payments over the term of the contract, provided that no credit event on the reference obligation occurs. If a credit event occurs, the seller generally must pay the buyer the "par value" (full notional amount) of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity described in the swap, or if the swap is cash settled the seller may be required to deliver the related net cash amount (the difference between the market value of the reference obligation and its par value). The Trust may be either the buyer or seller in the transaction. If the Trust is a buyer and no credit event occurs, the Trust will generally receive no payments from its counterparty under the swap if the swap is held through its termination date. However, if a credit event occurs, the buyer generally may elect to receive the full notional amount of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity, the value of which may have significantly decreased. As a seller, the Trust generally receives an upfront payment or a fixed rate of income throughout the term of the swap, which typically is between six months and three years, provided that there is no credit event. If a credit event occurs, generally the seller must pay the buyer the full notional amount of the swap in exchange for an equal face amount of deliverable obligations of the reference entity, the value of which may have significantly decreased. As the seller, the Trust would effectively add leverage to its portfolio because, in addition to its Managed Assets, the Trust would be subject to investment exposure on the notional amount of the swap.

Credit default swap agreements involve greater risks than if the Trust had taken a position in the reference obligation directly (either by purchasing or selling) since, in addition to general market risks, credit default swaps are subject to illiquidity risk, counterparty risk and credit risks. A buyer generally will also lose its upfront payment or any periodic payments it makes to the seller counterparty and receive no payments from its counterparty should no credit event occur and the swap is held to its termination date. If a credit event were to occur, the value of any deliverable obligation received by the seller, coupled with the upfront or periodic payments previously received, may be less than the full notional amount it pays to the buyer, resulting in a loss of value to the seller. A seller of a credit default swap or similar instrument is exposed to many of the same risks of leverage since, if a credit event occurs, the seller generally will be required to pay the buyer the full notional amount of the contract net of any amounts owed by the buyer related to its delivery of deliverable obligations. The Trust's obligations under a credit default swap agreement will be accrued daily (offset against any amounts

Table of Contents

owed to the Trust). The Trust will at all times segregate or designate on its books and records in connection with each such transaction liquid assets or cash with a value at least equal to the Trust's exposure (any accrued but unpaid net amounts owed by the Trust to any counterparty) on a marked-to-market basis (as required by the clearing organization with respect to cleared swaps or as calculated pursuant to requirements of the SEC). If the Trust is a seller of protection in a credit default swap transaction, it will designate on its books and records in connection with such transaction liquid assets or cash with a value at least equal to the full notional amount of the contract. Such designation will ensure that the Trust has assets available to satisfy its obligations with respect to the transaction and will avoid any potential leveraging of the Trust's portfolio. Such designation will not limit the Trust's exposure to loss.

In addition, the credit derivatives market is subject to a changing regulatory environment. It is possible that regulatory or other developments in the credit derivatives market could adversely affect the Trust's ability to successfully use credit derivatives.

Indexed and Inverse Securities. The Trust may invest in securities the potential return of which is based on the change in a specified interest rate or equity index (an "indexed security"). For example, the Trust may invest in a security that pays a variable amount of interest or principal based on the current level of the French or Korean stock markets. The Trust may also invest in securities whose return is inversely related to changes in an interest rate or index ("inverse securities"). In general, the return on inverse securities will decrease when the underlying index or interest rate goes up and increase when that index or interest rate goes down.

Repurchase Agreements and Purchase and Sale Contracts. The Trust may invest in repurchase agreements. A repurchase agreement is a contractual agreement whereby the seller of securities agrees to repurchase the same security at a specified price on a future date agreed upon by the parties. The agreed upon repurchase price determines the yield during the Trust's holding period. Repurchase agreements are considered to be loans collateralized by the underlying security that is the subject of the repurchase contract. Income generated from transactions in repurchase agreements will be taxable. The risk to the Trust is limited to the ability of the issuer to pay the agreed upon repurchase price on the delivery date; however, although the value of the underlying collateral at the time the transaction is entered into always equals or exceeds the agreed upon repurchase price, if the value of the collateral declines there is a risk of loss of both principal and interest. In the event of default, the collateral may be sold but the Trust might incur a loss if the value of the collateral declines, and might incur disposition costs or experience delays in connection with liquidating the collateral. In addition, if bankruptcy proceedings are commenced with respect to the seller of the security, realization upon the collateral by the Trust may be delayed or limited. The Advisor will monitor the value of the collateral at the time the transaction is entered into and at all times subsequent during the term of the repurchase agreement in an effort to determine that such value always equals or exceeds the agreed upon repurchase price. In the event the value of the collateral declines below the repurchase price, the Advisor will demand additional collateral from the issuer to increase the value of the collateral to at least that of the repurchase price, including interest.

A purchase and sale contract is similar to a repurchase agreement, but differs from a repurchase agreement in that the contract arrangements stipulate that the securities are owned by the Trust. In the event of a default under such a repurchase agreement or a purchase and sale contract, instead of the contractual fixed rate of return, the rate of return to the Trust will be dependent upon intervening fluctuations of the market value of such security and the accrued interest on the security. In such event, the Trust would have rights against the seller for breach of contract with respect to any losses arising from market fluctuations following the failure of the seller to perform.

Securities Lending. The Trust may lend portfolio securities to certain borrowers determined to be creditworthy by the Advisor, including to borrowers affiliated with the Advisor. The borrowers provide collateral that is maintained in an amount at least equal to the current market value of the securities loaned. No securities loan will be made on behalf of the Trust if, as a result, the aggregate value of all securities loans of the Trust exceeds one-third of the value of the Trust's total assets (including the value of the collateral received). The Trust

Table of Contents

may terminate a loan at any time and obtain the return of the securities loaned. The Trust receives the value of any interest or cash or non-cash distributions paid on the loaned securities.

With respect to loans that are collateralized by cash, the borrower may be entitled to receive a fee based on the amount of cash collateral. The Trust is compensated by the difference between the amount earned on the reinvestment of cash collateral and the fee paid to the borrower. In the case of collateral other than cash, the Trust is compensated by a fee paid by the borrower equal to a percentage of the market value of the loaned securities. Any cash collateral received by the Trust for such loans, and uninvested cash, may be invested, among other things, in a private investment company managed by an affiliate of the Advisor or in registered money market funds advised by the Advisor or its affiliates; such investments are subject to investment risk.

The Trust conducts its securities lending pursuant to an exemptive order from the SEC permitting it to lend portfolio securities to borrowers affiliated with the Trust and to retain an affiliate of the Trust as lending agent. To the extent that the Trust engages in securities lending, BlackRock Investment Management, LLC (“BIM”), an affiliate of the Advisor, acts as securities lending agent for the Trust, subject to the overall supervision of the Advisor. BIM administers the lending program in accordance with guidelines approved by the Board. Pursuant to the current securities lending agreement, BIM may lend securities only when the difference between the borrower rebate rate and the risk free rate exceeds a certain level.

To the extent that the Trust engages in securities lending, the Trust retains a portion of securities lending income and remits a remaining portion to BIM as compensation for its services as securities lending agent. Securities lending income is equal to the total of income earned from the reinvestment of cash collateral (and excludes collateral investment expenses as defined below), and any fees or other payments to and from borrowers of securities. As securities lending agent, BIM bears all operational costs directly related to securities lending. The Trust is responsible for expenses in connection with the investment of cash collateral received for securities on loan in a private investment company managed by an affiliate of the Advisor (the “collateral investment expenses”); however, BIM has agreed to cap the collateral investment expenses the Trust bears to an annual rate of 0.04% of the daily net assets of such private investment company. In addition, in accordance with the exemptive order, the investment adviser to the private investment company will not charge any advisory fees with respect to shares purchased by the Trust. Such shares also will not be subject to a sales load, redemption fee, distribution fee or service fee.

Pursuant to the current securities lending agreement, the Trust retains 82% of securities lending income (which excludes collateral investment expenses).

In addition, commencing the business day following the date that the aggregate securities lending income earned across the BlackRock Fixed-Income Complex in a calendar year exceeds the breakpoint dollar threshold applicable in the given year, the Trust, pursuant to the current securities lending agreement, will receive for the remainder of that calendar year securities lending income in an amount equal to 85% of securities lending income (which excludes collateral investment expenses).

Short Sales. The Trust may make short sales of securities. A short sale is a transaction in which the Trust sells a security it does not own in anticipation that the market price of that security will decline. The Trust may make short sales to hedge positions, for duration and risk management, in order to maintain portfolio flexibility or to enhance income or gain. When the Trust makes a short sale, it must borrow the security sold short and deliver it to the broker-dealer through which it made the short sale as collateral for its obligation to deliver the security upon conclusion of the sale. The Trust may have to pay a fee to borrow particular securities and is often obligated to pay over to the securities lender any income, distributions or dividends received on such borrowed securities until it returns the security to the securities lender. The Trust’s obligation to replace the borrowed security will be secured by collateral deposited with the securities lender, usually cash, U.S. Government securities or other liquid assets. The Trust will also be required to segregate or earmark similar collateral with its custodian to the extent, if any, necessary so that the aggregate collateral value is at all times at least equal to the

[Table of Contents](#)

current market value of the security sold short. Depending on arrangements made with the securities lender regarding payment over of any income, distributions or dividends received by the Trust on such security, the Trust may not receive any payments (including interest) on its collateral deposited with such securities lender. If the price of the security sold short increases between the time of the short sale and the time the Trust replaces the borrowed security, the Trust will incur a loss; conversely, if the price declines, the Trust will realize a gain. Any gain will be decreased, and any loss increased, by the transaction costs described above. Although the Trust's gain is limited to the price at which it sold the security short, its potential loss is theoretically unlimited. Short sales, even if covered, may represent a form of economic leverage and will create risks.

When-Issued, Delayed Delivery and Forward Commitment Securities. The Trust may purchase securities on a "when-issued" basis and may purchase or sell securities on a "forward commitment" basis (including on a "TBA" (to be announced) basis) or on a "delayed delivery" basis. When such transactions are negotiated, the price, which is generally expressed in yield terms, is fixed at the time the commitment is made, but delivery and payment for the securities take place at a later date. When-issued securities and forward commitments may be sold prior to the settlement date. If the Trust disposes of the right to acquire a when-issued security prior to its acquisition or disposes of its right to deliver or receive against a forward commitment, it might incur a gain or loss. At the time the Trust enters into a transaction on a when-issued or forward commitment basis, it will designate on its books and records cash or liquid assets with a value not less than the value of the when-issued or forward commitment securities. The value of these assets will be monitored daily to ensure that their marked to market value will at all times equal or exceed the corresponding obligations of the Trust. Pursuant to recommendations of the Treasury Market Practices Group, which is sponsored by the Federal Reserve Board of New York, the Trust or its counterparty generally is required to post collateral when entering into certain forward-settling transactions, including without limitation TBA transactions.

There is always a risk that the securities may not be delivered and that the Trust may incur a loss. Settlements in the ordinary course are not treated by the Trust as when-issued or forward commitment transactions and accordingly are not subject to the foregoing restrictions.

Counterparty Credit Standards. To the extent that the Trust engages in principal transactions, including, but not limited to, OTC options, forward currency transactions, swap transactions, repurchase and reverse repurchase agreements and the purchase and sale of bonds and other fixed-income securities, it must rely on the creditworthiness of its counterparties under such transactions. In certain instances, the credit risk of a counterparty is increased by the lack of a central clearing house for certain transactions, including certain swap contracts. In the event of the insolvency of a counterparty, the Trust may not be able to recover its assets, in full or at all, during the insolvency process. Counterparties to investments may have no obligation to make markets in such investments and may have the ability to apply essentially discretionary margin and credit requirements. Similarly, the Trust will be subject to the risk of bankruptcy of, or the inability or refusal to perform with respect to such investments by, the counterparties with which it deals. The Advisor will seek to minimize the Trust's exposure to counterparty risk by entering into such transactions with counterparties the Advisor believes to be creditworthy at the time it enters into the transaction. Certain option transactions and Strategic Transactions may require the Trust to provide collateral to secure its performance obligations under a contract, which would also entail counterparty credit risk.

LEVERAGE

The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares. The Trust is, however, permitted to borrow money or issue debt securities in an amount up to 33 1/3% of its Managed Assets (50% of its net assets), and issue preferred shares in an amount up to 50% of its Managed Assets (100% of its net assets). "Managed Assets" means the total assets of the Trust (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes) minus the sum of the Trust's accrued liabilities (other than money borrowed for investment purposes). Although it has no present intention to do so, the Trust reserves the right to borrow

[Table of Contents](#)

money from banks or other financial institutions, or issue debt securities or preferred shares, in the future if it believes that market conditions would be conducive to the successful implementation of a leveraging strategy through borrowing money or issuing debt securities or preferred shares. Any such leveraging will not be fully achieved until the proceeds resulting from the use of leverage have been invested in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies.

The use of leverage, if employed, can create risks. When leverage is employed, the NAV and market price of the common shares and the yield to holders of common shares will be more volatile than if leverage were not used. Changes in the value of the Trust's portfolio, including securities bought with the proceeds of leverage, will be borne entirely by the holders of common shares. If there is a net decrease or increase in the value of the Trust's investment portfolio, leverage will decrease or increase, as the case may be, the NAV per common share to a greater extent than if the Trust did not utilize leverage. A reduction in the Trust's NAV may cause a reduction in the market price of its shares. During periods in which the Trust is using leverage, the fee paid to the Advisor for advisory services will be higher than if the Trust did not use leverage, because the fees paid will be calculated on the basis of the Trust's Managed Assets, which includes the proceeds from leverage. Any leveraging strategy the Trust employs may not be successful. See "Risks—Leverage Risk."

Certain types of leverage the Trust may use may result in the Trust being subject to covenants relating to asset coverage and portfolio composition requirements. The Trust may be subject to certain restrictions on investments imposed by one or more lenders or by guidelines of one or more rating agencies, which may issue ratings for any short-term debt securities or preferred shares issued by the Trust. The terms of any borrowings or rating agency guidelines may impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed by the Investment Company Act. The Advisor does not believe that these covenants or guidelines will impede it from managing the Trust's portfolio in accordance with its investment objectives and policies if the Trust were to utilize leverage.

Under the Investment Company Act, the Trust is not permitted to issue senior securities if, immediately after the issuance of such senior securities, the Trust would have an asset coverage ratio (as defined in the Investment Company Act) of less than 300% with respect to senior securities representing indebtedness (i.e., for every dollar of indebtedness outstanding, the Trust is required to have at least three dollars of assets) or less than 200% with respect to senior securities representing preferred stock (i.e., for every dollar of preferred stock outstanding, the Trust is required to have at least two dollars of assets). The Investment Company Act also provides that the Trust may not declare distributions or purchase its stock (including through tender offers) if, immediately after doing so, it will have an asset coverage ratio of less than 300% or 200%, as applicable. Under the Investment Company Act, certain short-term borrowings (such as for cash management purposes) are not subject to these limitations if (i) repaid within 60 days, (ii) not extended or renewed and (iii) not in excess of 5% of the total assets of the Trust.

Credit Facility

The Trust is permitted to leverage its portfolio by entering into one or more credit facilities. If the Trust enters into a credit facility, the Trust may be required to prepay outstanding amounts or incur a penalty rate of interest upon the occurrence of certain events of default. The Trust would also likely have to indemnify the lenders under the credit facility against liabilities they may incur in connection therewith. In addition, the Trust expects that any credit facility would contain covenants that, among other things, likely would limit the Trust's ability to pay distributions in certain circumstances, incur additional debt, change certain of its investment policies and engage in certain transactions, including mergers and consolidations, and require asset coverage ratios in addition to those required by the Investment Company Act. The Trust may be required to pledge its assets and to maintain a portion of its assets in cash or high-grade securities as a reserve against interest or principal payments and expenses. The Trust expects that any credit facility would have customary covenant, negative covenant and default provisions. There can be no assurance that the Trust will enter into an agreement for a credit facility, or one on terms and conditions representative of the foregoing, or that additional material

[Table of Contents](#)

terms will not apply. In addition, if entered into, a credit facility may in the future be replaced or refinanced by one or more credit facilities having substantially different terms or by the issuance of preferred shares.

Reverse Repurchase Agreements

The Trust may enter into reverse repurchase agreements with respect to its portfolio investments subject to the investment restrictions set forth herein. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the sale of securities held by the Trust with an agreement by the Trust to repurchase the securities at an agreed upon price, date and interest payment. At the time the Trust enters into a reverse repurchase agreement, it may establish and maintain a segregated account with the custodian containing, or designate on its books and records, cash and/or liquid assets having a value not less than the repurchase price (including accrued interest). If the Trust establishes and maintains such a segregated account, or earmarks such assets as described, a reverse repurchase agreement will not be considered a senior security under the Investment Company Act and therefore will not be considered a borrowing by the Trust; however, under certain circumstances in which the Trust does not establish and maintain such a segregated account, or earmark such assets on its books and records, such reverse repurchase agreement will be considered a borrowing for the purpose of the Trust's limitation on borrowings discussed above. The use by the Trust of reverse repurchase agreements involves many of the same risks of leverage since the proceeds derived from such reverse repurchase agreements may be invested in additional securities. Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of the securities acquired in connection with the reverse repurchase agreement may decline below the price of the securities the Trust has sold but is obligated to repurchase. Also, reverse repurchase agreements involve the risk that the market value of the securities retained in lieu of sale by the Trust in connection with the reverse repurchase agreement may decline in price.

If the buyer of securities under a reverse repurchase agreement files for bankruptcy or becomes insolvent, such buyer or its trustee or receiver may receive an extension of time to determine whether to enforce the Trust's obligation to repurchase the securities and the Trust's use of the proceeds of the reverse repurchase agreement may effectively be restricted pending such decision. Also, the Trust would bear the risk of loss to the extent that the proceeds of the reverse repurchase agreement are less than the value of the securities subject to such agreement.

The Trust also may effect simultaneous purchase and sale transactions that are known as "sale-buybacks." A sale-buyback is similar to a reverse repurchase agreement, except that in a sale-buyback, the counterparty that purchases the security is entitled to receive any principal or interest payments made on the underlying security pending settlement of the Trust's repurchase of the underlying security.

Dollar Roll Transactions

The Trust may enter into "dollar roll" transactions. In a dollar roll transaction, the Trust sells a mortgage related or other security to a dealer and simultaneously agrees to repurchase a similar security (but not the same security) in the future at a pre-determined price. A dollar roll transaction can be viewed, like a reverse repurchase agreement, as a collateralized borrowing in which the Trust pledges a mortgage related security to a dealer to obtain cash. However, unlike reverse repurchase agreements, the dealer with which the Trust enters into a dollar roll transaction is not obligated to return the same securities as those originally sold by the Trust, but rather only securities which are "substantially identical," which generally means that the securities repurchased will bear the same interest rate and a similar maturity as those sold, but the pools of mortgages collateralizing those securities may have different prepayment histories than those sold.

During the period between the sale and repurchase, the Trust will not be entitled to receive interest and principal payments on the securities sold. Proceeds of the sale will be invested in additional instruments for the Trust and the income from these investments will generate income for the Trust. If such income does not exceed the income, capital appreciation and gain that would have been realized on the securities sold as part of the dollar roll, the use of this technique will diminish the investment performance of the Trust compared with what the performance would have been without the use of dollar rolls.

Table of Contents

At the time the Trust enters into a dollar roll transaction, it may establish and maintain a segregated account with the custodian containing, or designate on its books and records, cash and/or liquid assets having a value not less than the repurchase price (including accrued interest). If the Trust establishes and maintains such a segregated account, or earmarks such assets as described, a dollar roll transaction will not be considered a senior security under the Investment Company Act and therefore will not be considered a borrowing by the Trust; however, under certain circumstances in which the Trust does not establish and maintain such a segregated account, or earmark such assets on its books and records, such dollar roll transaction will be considered a borrowing for the purpose of the Trust's limitation on borrowings discussed above.

Dollar roll transactions involve the risk that the market value of the securities the Trust is required to purchase may decline below the agreed upon repurchase price of those securities. The Trust's right to purchase or repurchase securities may be restricted. Successful use of mortgage dollar rolls may depend upon the investment manager's ability to correctly predict interest rates and prepayments. There is no assurance that dollar rolls can be successfully employed.

Preferred Shares

The Trust is permitted to leverage its portfolio by issuing preferred shares. Under the Investment Company Act, the Trust is not permitted to issue preferred shares if, immediately after such issuance, the liquidation value of the Trust's outstanding preferred shares exceeds 50% of its assets (including the proceeds from the issuance) less liabilities other than borrowings (i.e., the value of the Trust's assets must be at least 200% of the liquidation value of its outstanding preferred shares). In addition, the Trust would not be permitted to declare any cash dividend or other distribution on its common shares unless, at the time of such declaration, the value of the Trust's assets less liabilities other than borrowings is at least 200% of such liquidation value.

The Trust expects that preferred shares, if issued, will pay adjustable rate dividends based on shorter-term interest rates, which would be redetermined periodically by a fixed spread or remarketing process, subject to a maximum rate which would increase over time in the event of an extended period of unsuccessful remarketing. The adjustment period for preferred share dividends could be as short as one day or as long as a year or more. Preferred shares, if issued, could include a liquidity feature that allows holders of preferred shares to have their shares purchased by a liquidity provider in the event that sell orders have not been matched with purchase orders and successfully settled in a remarketing. The Trust expects that it would pay a fee to the provider of this liquidity feature, which would be borne by common shareholders of the Trust. The terms of such liquidity feature could require the Trust to redeem preferred shares still owned by the liquidity provider following a certain period of continuous, unsuccessful remarketing, which may adversely impact the Trust.

If preferred shares are issued, the Trust may, to the extent possible, purchase or redeem preferred shares from time to time to the extent necessary in order to maintain asset coverage of any preferred shares of at least 200%. In addition, as a condition to obtaining ratings on the preferred shares, the terms of any preferred shares issued are expected to include asset coverage maintenance provisions which will require the redemption of the preferred shares in the event of non-compliance by the Trust and may also prohibit dividends and other distributions on the common shares in such circumstances. In order to meet redemption requirements, the Trust may have to liquidate portfolio securities. Such liquidations and redemptions would cause the Trust to incur related transaction costs and could result in capital losses to the Trust. Prohibitions on dividends and other distributions on the common shares could impair the Trust's ability to qualify as a RIC under the Code. If the Trust has preferred shares outstanding, two of the Trustees will be elected by the holders of preferred shares voting separately as a class. The remaining Trustees will be elected by holders of common shares and preferred shares voting together as a single class. In the event the Trust failed to pay dividends on preferred shares for two years, holders of preferred shares would be entitled to elect a majority of the Trustees.

If the Trust issues preferred shares, the Trust expects that it will be subject to certain restrictions imposed by guidelines of one or more rating agencies that may issue ratings for preferred shares issued by the Trust. These

Table of Contents

guidelines are expected to impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Trust by the Investment Company Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or guidelines would impede the Advisor from managing the Trust's portfolio in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies.

Derivatives

The Trust may enter into derivative transactions that have economic leverage embedded in them. Derivative transactions that the Trust may enter into and the risks associated with them are described elsewhere in this prospectus and are also referred to as "Strategic Transactions." The Trust cannot assure you that investments in derivative transactions that have economic leverage embedded in them will result in a higher return on its common shares.

To the extent the terms of such transactions obligate the Trust to make payments, the Trust may earmark or segregate cash or liquid assets in an amount at least equal to the current value of the amount then payable by the Trust under the terms of such transactions or otherwise cover such transactions in accordance with applicable interpretations of the staff of the SEC. If the current value of the amount then payable by the Trust under the terms of such transactions is represented by the notional amounts of such investments, the Trust would segregate or earmark cash or liquid assets having a market value at least equal to such notional amounts, and if the current value of the amount then payable by the Trust under the terms of such transactions is represented by the market value of the Trust's current obligations, the Trust would segregate or earmark cash or liquid assets having a market value at least equal to such current obligations. To the extent the terms of such transactions obligate the Trust to deliver particular securities to extinguish the Trust's obligations under such transactions the Trust may "cover" its obligations under such transactions by either (i) owning the securities or collateral underlying such transactions or (ii) having an absolute and immediate right to acquire such securities or collateral without additional cash consideration (or, if additional cash consideration is required, having earmarked or segregated an appropriate amount of cash or liquid assets). Such earmarking, segregation or cover is intended to provide the Trust with available assets to satisfy its obligations under such transactions. As a result of such earmarking, segregation or cover, the Trust's obligations under such transactions will not be considered senior securities representing indebtedness for purposes of the Investment Company Act, or considered borrowings subject to the Trust's limitations on borrowings discussed above, but may create leverage for the Trust. To the extent that the Trust's obligations under such transactions are not so earmarked, segregated or covered, such obligations may be considered "senior securities representing indebtedness" under the Investment Company Act and therefore subject to the 300% asset coverage requirement.

These earmarking, segregation or cover requirements can result in the Trust maintaining securities positions it would otherwise liquidate, segregating or earmarking assets at a time when it might be disadvantageous to do so or otherwise restrict portfolio management.

Temporary Borrowings

The Trust may also borrow money as a temporary measure for extraordinary or emergency purposes, including the payment of dividends and the settlement of securities transactions which otherwise might require untimely dispositions of Trust securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

RISKS

The NAV and market price of, and dividends paid on, the common shares will fluctuate with and be affected by, among other things, the risks more fully described below.

No Operating History

The Trust is a newly organized, non-diversified, closed-end management investment company with no operating history. The Trust does not have any historical financial statements or other meaningful operating or financial data on which potential investors may evaluate the Trust and its performance. An investment in the Trust is therefore subject to all of the risks and uncertainties associated with a new business, including the risk that the Trust will not achieve its investment objectives and that the value of any potential investment in our common shares could decline substantially as a consequence.

Limited Term Risk

Unless the limited term provision of the Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust is amended by shareholders in accordance with the Agreement and Declaration of Trust, or unless the Trust completes an Eligible Tender Offer and converts to perpetual existence, the Trust will dissolve on or about the Dissolution Date. **The Trust is not a so called "target date" or "life cycle" fund whose asset allocation becomes more conservative over time as its target date, often associated with retirement, approaches. In addition, the Trust is not a "target term" fund and thus does not seek to return its initial public offering price per common share upon dissolution.** As the assets of the Trust will be liquidated in connection with its dissolution, the Trust may be required to sell portfolio securities when it otherwise would not, including at times when market conditions are not favorable, which may cause the Trust to lose money. In addition, as the Trust approaches the Dissolution Date, the Advisor may invest the proceeds of sold, matured or called securities in money market mutual funds, cash, cash equivalents, securities issued or guaranteed by the U.S. government or its instrumentalities or agencies, high quality, short-term money market instruments, short-term debt securities, certificates of deposit, bankers' acceptances and other bank obligations, commercial paper or other liquid debt securities, which may adversely affect the Trust's investment performance. Rather than reinvesting proceeds received from sales of or payments received in respect of portfolio securities, the Trust may distribute such proceeds in one or more liquidating distributions prior to the final dissolution, which may cause the Trust's fixed expenses to increase when expressed as a percentage of net assets attributable to common shares, or the Trust may invest the proceeds in lower yielding securities or hold the proceeds in cash or cash equivalents, which may adversely affect the performance of the Trust. The final distribution of net assets upon dissolution may be more than, equal to or less than \$20.00 per common share. Because the Trust may adopt a plan of liquidation and make liquidating distributions in advance of the Dissolution Date, the total value of the Trust's assets returned to common shareholders upon dissolution will be impacted by decisions of the Board and the Advisor regarding the timing of adopting a plan of liquidation and making liquidating distributions. This may result in common shareholders receiving liquidating distributions with a value more or less than the value that would have been received if the Trust had liquidated all of its assets on the Dissolution Date, or any other potential date for liquidation referenced in this prospectus, and distributed the proceeds thereof to shareholders.

If the Trust conducts an Eligible Tender Offer, the Trust anticipates that funds to pay the aggregate purchase price of shares accepted for purchase pursuant to the tender offer will be first derived from any cash on hand and then from the proceeds from the sale of portfolio investments held by the Trust. The risks related to the disposition of securities in connection with the Trust's dissolution also would be present in connection with the disposition of securities in connection with an Eligible Tender Offer. It is likely that during the pendency of a tender offer, and possibly for a time thereafter, the Trust will hold a greater than normal percentage of its total assets in cash and cash equivalents, which may impede the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives and decrease returns to shareholders. The tax effect of any such dispositions of portfolio investments will depend on the difference between the price at which the investments are sold and the tax basis of the Trust in the

[Table of Contents](#)

investments. Any capital gains recognized on such dispositions, as reduced by any capital losses the Trust realizes in the year of such dispositions and by any available capital loss carryforwards, will be distributed to shareholders as capital gain dividends (to the extent of net long-term capital gains over net short-term capital losses) or ordinary dividends (to the extent of net short-term capital gains over net long-term capital losses) during or with respect to such year, and such distributions will generally be taxable to common shareholders. If the Trust's tax basis for the investments sold is less than the sale proceeds, the Trust will recognize capital gains, which the Trust will be required to distribute to common shareholders. In addition, the Trust's purchase of tendered common shares pursuant to an Eligible Tender Offer will have tax consequences for tendering common shareholders and may have tax consequences for non-tendering common shareholders. See "Tax Matters" below.

The purchase of common shares by the Trust pursuant to an Eligible Tender Offer will have the effect of increasing the proportionate interest in the Trust of non-tendering common shareholders. All common shareholders remaining after an Eligible Tender Offer will be subject to any increased risks associated with the reduction in the Trust's assets resulting from payment for the tendered common shares, such as greater volatility due to decreased diversification and proportionately higher expenses. The reduced assets of the Trust as a result of an Eligible Tender Offer may result in less investment flexibility for the Trust and may have an adverse effect on the Trust's investment performance. Such reduction in the Trust's assets may also cause common shares of the Trust to become thinly traded or otherwise negatively impact secondary trading of common shares. A reduction in assets, and the corresponding increase in the Trust's expense ratio, could result in lower returns and put the Trust at a disadvantage relative to its peers and potentially cause the Trust's common shares to trade at a wider discount to NAV than they otherwise would. Furthermore, the portfolio of the Trust following an Eligible Tender Offer could be significantly different and, therefore, common shareholders retaining an investment in the Trust could be subject to greater risk. For example, the Trust may be required to sell its more liquid, higher quality portfolio investments to purchase common shares that are tendered in an Eligible Tender Offer, which would leave a less liquid, lower quality portfolio for remaining shareholders. The prospects of an Eligible Tender Offer may attract arbitrageurs who would purchase the common shares prior to the tender offer for the sole purpose of tendering those shares which could have the effect of exacerbating the risks described herein for shareholders retaining an investment in the Trust following an Eligible Tender Offer.

The Trust is not required to conduct an Eligible Tender Offer. If the Trust conducts an Eligible Tender Offer, there can be no assurance that the payment for tendered common shares would not result in the Trust having aggregate net assets below the Dissolution Threshold, in which case the Eligible Tender Offer will be canceled, no common shares will be repurchased pursuant to the Eligible Tender Offer and the Trust will liquidate on the Dissolution Date (subject to possible extensions). Following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer in which the payment for tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets greater than or equal to the Dissolution Threshold, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, eliminate the Dissolution Date without shareholder approval and provide for the Trust's perpetual existence. Thereafter, the Trust will have a perpetual existence. There is no guarantee that the Board will eliminate the Dissolution Date following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer so that the Trust will have a perpetual existence. The Advisor may have a conflict of interest in recommending to the Board that the Dissolution Date be eliminated and the Trust have a perpetual existence. The Trust is not required to conduct additional tender offers following an Eligible Tender Offer and conversion to perpetual existence. Therefore, remaining common shareholders may not have another opportunity to participate in a tender offer. Shares of closed-end management investment companies frequently trade at a discount from their NAV, and as a result remaining common shareholders may only be able to sell their shares at a discount to NAV.

Although it is anticipated that the Trust will have distributed substantially all of its net assets to shareholders as soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, securities for which no market exists or securities trading at depressed prices, if any, may be placed in a liquidating trust. Securities placed in a liquidating trust may be held for an indefinite period of time, potentially several years or longer, until they can be sold or pay out all of their cash flows. During such time, the shareholders will continue to be exposed to the risks associated with the Trust and the value of their interest in the liquidating trust will fluctuate with the value of the liquidating trust's remaining assets.

[Table of Contents](#)

Additionally, the tax treatment of the liquidating trust's assets may differ from the tax treatment applicable to such assets when held by the Trust. To the extent the costs associated with a liquidating trust exceed the value of the remaining securities, the liquidating trust trustees may determine to dispose of the remaining securities in a manner of their choosing. The Trust cannot predict the amount, if any, of securities that will be required to be placed in a liquidating trust or how long it will take to sell or otherwise dispose of such securities.

Non-Diversified Status

The Trust is a non-diversified fund. As defined in the Investment Company Act, a non-diversified fund may have a significant part of its investments in a smaller number of issuers than can a diversified fund. Having a larger percentage of assets in a smaller number of issuers makes a non-diversified fund, like the Trust, more susceptible to the risk that one single event or occurrence can have a significant adverse impact upon the Trust.

Investment and Market Discount Risk

An investment in the Trust's common shares is subject to investment risk, including the possible loss of the entire amount that you invest. As with any stock, the price of the Trust's common shares will fluctuate with market conditions and other factors. If shares are sold, the price received may be more or less than the original investment. Common shares are designed for long-term investors and the Trust should not be treated as a trading vehicle. Shares of closed-end management investment companies frequently trade at a discount from their NAV. This risk is separate and distinct from the risk that the Trust's NAV could decrease as a result of its investment activities. At any point in time an investment in the Trust's common shares may be worth less than the original amount invested, even after taking into account distributions paid by the Trust. This risk may be greater for investors who sell their common shares in a relatively short period of time after completion of the initial offering. During periods in which the Trust may use leverage, the Trust's investment, market discount and certain other risks will be magnified.

Science and Technology Risk

The Trust's investment policies, including its fundamental policy of concentrating its investments in companies operating in one or more industries within the technology group of industries, and investment focus may subject it to more risks than funds that are more broadly diversified over companies with differing characteristics and operating in numerous sectors of the economy. General changes in market sentiment towards science and technology companies may adversely affect the Trust, and the performance of science and technology companies may lag behind the broader market as a whole. Also, the Trust's investments may subject it to a variety of risks, including the following, which may cause the value of the common shares of the Trust to fluctuate significantly over relatively short periods of time:

Technology Company Risk. The market prices of technology and technology-related stocks tend to exhibit a greater degree of market risk and price volatility than other types of investments. These stocks may fall in and out of favor with investors rapidly, which may cause sudden selling and dramatically lower market prices. These stocks also may be affected adversely by changes in technology, consumer and business purchasing patterns, short product cycles, falling prices and profits, government regulation, lack of standardization or compatibility with existing technologies, intense competition, aggressive pricing, dependence on copyright and/or patent protection and/or obsolete products or services. Certain technology-related companies may face special risks that their products or services may not prove to be commercially successful. Technology-related companies are also strongly affected by worldwide scientific or technological developments. As a result, their products may rapidly become obsolete. Such companies are also often subject to governmental regulation and may, therefore, be adversely affected by governmental policies. In addition, a rising interest rate environment tends to negatively affect technology and technology-related companies. In such an environment, those companies with high market valuations may appear less attractive to investors, which may cause sharp decreases in the companies' market prices. Further, those technology or technology-related companies seeking to finance their expansion would have

[Table of Contents](#)

increased borrowing costs, which may negatively impact their earnings. As a result, these factors may negatively affect the performance of the Trust. Finally, the Trust may be susceptible to factors affecting the technology and technology-related industries, and the Trust's NAV may fluctuate more than a fund that invests in a wider range of industries. Technology and technology-related companies are often smaller and less experienced companies and may be subject to greater risks than larger companies, such as limited product lines, markets and financial and managerial resources. These risks may be heightened for technology companies in foreign markets.

Telecommunications Company Risk. The telecommunications industry today includes both traditional telephone companies, with a history of broad market coverage and highly regulated businesses, and cable companies, which began as small, lightly regulated businesses focused on limited markets. Today these two historically different businesses are converging in an industry that is trending toward larger, competitive national and international markets with an emphasis on deregulation. Companies that distribute telephone services and provide access to the telephone networks still comprise the greatest portion of this segment, but non-regulated activities such as wireless telephone services, paging, data transmission and processing, equipment retailing, computer software and hardware and internet services are becoming increasingly significant components as well. In particular, wireless and internet telephone services continue to gain market share at the expense of traditional telephone companies. The presence of unregulated companies in this industry and the entry of traditional telephone companies into unregulated or less regulated businesses provide significant investment opportunities with companies that may increase their earnings at faster rates than had been allowed in traditional regulated businesses. Still, increasing competition, technological innovations and other structural changes could adversely affect the profitability of such companies and the growth rate of their dividends. Given mergers and proposed legislation and enforcement changes, it is likely that both traditional telephone companies and cable companies will continue to provide an expanding range of services to both residential, corporate and governmental customers.

Additionally, telecommunications companies can be adversely affected by, among other things, changes in government regulation, intense competition, dependency on patent protection, significant capital expenditures, heavy debt burdens and rapid obsolescence of products and services due to product compatibility or changing consumer preferences.

Life Sciences Industries Risk. Life sciences industries are characterized by limited product focus, rapidly changing technology and extensive government regulation. In particular, technological advances can render an existing product, which may account for a disproportionate share of a company's revenue, obsolete. Obtaining governmental approval from agencies such as the FDA, the U.S. Department of Agriculture and other governmental agencies for new products can be lengthy, expensive and uncertain as to outcome. Any delays in product development may result in the need to seek additional capital, potentially diluting the interests of existing investors such as the Trust. In addition, governmental agencies may, for a variety of reasons, restrict the release of certain innovative technologies of commercial significance, such as genetically altered material. These various factors may result in abrupt advances and declines in the securities prices of particular companies and, in some cases, may have a broad effect on the prices of securities of companies in particular life sciences industries.

Intense competition exists within and among certain life sciences industries, including competition to obtain and sustain proprietary technology protection. Life sciences companies can be highly dependent on the strength of patents, trademarks and other intellectual property rights for maintenance of profit margins and market share. The complex nature of the technologies involved can lead to patent disputes, including litigation that may be costly and that could result in a company losing an exclusive right to a patent. Competitors of life sciences companies may have substantially greater financial resources, more extensive development, manufacturing, marketing and service capabilities, and a larger number of qualified managerial and technical personnel. Such competitors may succeed in developing technologies and products that are more effective or less costly than any that may be developed by life sciences companies in which the Trust invests and may also prove to be more successful in production and marketing. Competition may increase further as a result of potential advances in health services and medical technology and greater availability of capital for investment in these fields.

[Table of Contents](#)

With respect to healthcare, cost containment measures already implemented by the federal government, state governments and the private sector have adversely affected certain sectors of these industries. If not repealed, the implementation of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act may create increased demand for healthcare products and services but also may have an adverse effect on some companies in the health sciences industry. Increased emphasis on managed care in the United States may put pressure on the price and usage of products sold by life sciences companies in which the Trust may invest and may adversely affect the sales and revenues of life sciences companies.

Product development efforts by life sciences companies may not result in commercial products for many reasons, including, but not limited to, failure to achieve acceptable clinical trial results, limited effectiveness in treating the specified condition or illness, harmful side effects, failure to obtain regulatory approval, and high manufacturing costs. Even after a product is commercially released, governmental agencies may require additional clinical trials or change the labeling requirements for products if additional product side effects are identified, which could have a material adverse effect on the market price of the securities of those life sciences companies.

Certain life sciences companies in which the Trust may invest may be exposed to potential product liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of pharmaceuticals, medical devices or other products. There can be no assurances that a product liability claim would not have a material adverse effect on the business, financial condition or securities prices of a company in which the Trust has invested.

Biotechnology Company Risk. The success of biotechnology companies is highly dependent on the development, procurement and/or marketing of drugs. The values of biotechnology companies are also dependent on the development, protection and exploitation of intellectual property rights and other proprietary information, and the profitability of biotechnology companies may be significantly affected by such things as the expiration of patents or the loss of, or the inability to enforce, intellectual property rights.

The research and other costs associated with developing or procuring new drugs, products or technologies and the related intellectual property rights can be significant, and the results of such research and expenditures are unpredictable. There can be no assurance that those efforts or costs will result in the development of a profitable drug, product or technology. Moreover, the process for obtaining regulatory approval by the FDA or other governmental regulatory authorities is long and costly and there can be no assurance that the necessary approvals will be obtained or maintained.

Biotechnology companies are also subject to rapid and significant technological change and competitive forces that may make drugs, products or technologies obsolete or make it difficult to raise prices and, in fact, may result in price discounting. Biotechnology companies may also be subject to expenses and losses from extensive litigation based on intellectual property, product liability and similar claims. Failure of biotechnology companies to comply with applicable laws and regulations can result in the imposition of civil and/or criminal fines, penalties and, in some instances, exclusion of participation in government sponsored programs such as Medicare and Medicaid.

Biotechnology companies may be adversely affected by government regulation and changes in reimbursement rates. Healthcare providers, principally hospitals, that transact with biotechnology companies, often rely on third party payors, such as Medicare, Medicaid, private health insurance plans and health maintenance organizations to reimburse all or a portion of the cost of healthcare related products or services.

Biotechnology companies will continue to be affected by the efforts of governments and third party payors to contain or reduce health care costs. For example, certain foreign markets control pricing or profitability of biotechnology products and technologies. In the United States, there has been, and there will likely continue to be, a number of federal and state proposals to implement similar controls.

[Table of Contents](#)

A biotechnology company's valuation could be based on the potential or actual performance of a limited number of products. A biotechnology company's valuation could be affected if one of its products proves unsafe, ineffective or unprofitable. Such companies may also be characterized by thin capitalization and limited markets, financial resources or personnel. The stock prices of companies involved in the biotechnology sector have been and will likely continue to be extremely volatile.

Pharmaceutical Company Risk. The success of pharmaceutical companies is highly dependent on the development, procurement and marketing of drugs. The values of pharmaceutical companies are also dependent on the development, protection and exploitation of intellectual property rights and other proprietary information, and the profitability of pharmaceutical companies may be significantly affected by such things as the expiration of patents or the loss of, or the inability to enforce, intellectual property rights.

The research and other costs associated with developing or procuring new drugs and the related intellectual property rights can be significant, and the results of such research and expenditures are unpredictable. There can be no assurance that those efforts or costs will result in the development of a profitable drug. Pharmaceutical companies may be susceptible to product obsolescence. Many pharmaceutical companies face intense competition from new products and less costly generic products. Moreover, the process for obtaining regulatory approval by the FDA or other governmental regulatory authorities is long and costly and there can be no assurance that the necessary approvals will be obtained or maintained.

Pharmaceutical companies are also subject to rapid and significant technological change and competitive forces that may make drugs obsolete or make it difficult to raise prices and, in fact, may result in price discounting. Pharmaceutical companies may also be subject to expenses and losses from extensive litigation based on intellectual property, product liability and similar claims. Failure of pharmaceutical companies to comply with applicable laws and regulations can result in the imposition of civil and criminal fines, penalties and, in some instances, exclusion of participation in government sponsored programs such as Medicare and Medicaid.

Pharmaceutical companies may be adversely affected by government regulation and changes in reimbursement rates. The ability of many pharmaceutical companies to commercialize current and any future products depends in part on the extent to which reimbursement for the cost of such products and related treatments are available from third party payors, such as Medicare, Medicaid, private health insurance plans and health maintenance organizations. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the price and cost-effectiveness of medical products.

Significant uncertainty exists as to the reimbursement status of health care products, and there can be no assurance that adequate third-party coverage will be available for pharmaceutical companies to obtain satisfactory price levels for their products.

The international operations of many pharmaceutical companies expose them to risks associated with instability and changes in economic and political conditions, foreign currency fluctuations, changes in foreign regulations and other risks inherent to international business. Additionally, a pharmaceutical company's valuation can often be based largely on the potential or actual performance of a limited number of products. A pharmaceutical company's valuation can also be greatly affected if one of its products proves unsafe, ineffective or unprofitable. Such companies also may be characterized by thin capitalization and limited markets, financial resources or personnel, as well as dependence on wholesale distributors. The stock prices of companies in the pharmaceutical industry have been and will likely continue to be extremely volatile.

Industrial Products, Services and Equipment Company Risk. Industrial products, services and equipment companies may include manufacturers of civil or military aerospace and defense equipment, building components and home improvement products and equipment, civil engineering firms and large-scale contractors, companies producing electrical components or equipment, manufacturers of industrial machinery and industrial components and products, providers of commercial printing services, and companies providing transportation

Table of Contents

services. Industrial products, services and equipment companies can be significantly affected by general economic trends, changes in consumer sentiment and spending, commodity prices, technological obsolescence, labor relations, legislation, government regulations and spending, import controls, and worldwide competition, and can be subject to liability for environmental damage, depletion of resources, and mandated expenditures for safety and pollution control.

Media Company Risk. Companies engaged in the design, production or distribution of goods or services for the media industry may become obsolete quickly. Media companies are subject to risks that include cyclicity of revenues and earnings, a decrease in the discretionary income of targeted individuals, changing consumer tastes and interests, fierce competition in the industry and the potential for increased government regulation. Media company revenues largely are dependent on advertising spending. A weakening general economy or a shift from online to other forms of advertising may lead to a reduction in discretionary spending on online advertising. Competitive pressures and government regulation can significantly affect media companies. Additionally, intellectual property rights are very important to many media companies and the expiration of intellectual property rights or other events that adversely affect a media company's intellectual property rights may materially and adversely affect the value of its securities.

Consumer Finance Company Risk. Consumer finance companies can be significantly affected by changing economic conditions, demand for consumer loans, refinancing activity and intense competition. Profitability can be largely dependent on the availability and cost of capital and the rate of consumer debt defaults, and can fluctuate significantly when interest rates change. Profitability can in particular be adversely impacted during periods of rising interest rates. Financial difficulties of borrowers can negatively affect consumer finance companies. Consumer finance companies are subject to extensive government regulation, which can change frequently and may adversely affect the scope of their activities, the prices they can charge and the amount of capital they must maintain, or may affect them in other ways that are unforeseeable. In the recent past, financial services companies in general experienced considerable financial distress, which led to the implementation of government programs designed to ease that distress.

Energy Company Risk. Energy and natural resources companies are especially affected by variations in the commodities markets and these companies may lack the resources and the broad business lines to weather hard times. Fluctuations in commodity prices can result from changes in general economic conditions or political circumstances (especially of key energy-consuming countries); market conditions; weather patterns; domestic production levels; volume of imports; energy conservation; domestic and foreign governmental regulation; international politics; policies of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries ("OPEC"); taxation; tariffs; and the availability and costs of local, intrastate and interstate transportation methods, among other factors that the Trust cannot control. Energy companies can be significantly affected by the supply of and demand for specific products and services, the supply of and demand for oil and gas, the price of oil and gas, exploration and production spending, research and development costs related to new technologies, the success or failure of efforts to develop or implement new or existing technologies, government regulation (including environmental regulation), world events and economic conditions, the cyclical nature of the energy sector, weather patterns and extreme weather conditions, intense competition, events relating to domestic and international political developments, energy conservation, environmental costs and liabilities, the success of exploration projects, catastrophes and terrorism, commodity prices, and tax regulations.

Defense/Aerospace Company Risk. The principal risks facing defense/aerospace companies include the fact that procurement cycles can be as long as ten years and that the rate of growth in defense spending may slow down. Defense/aerospace companies may be adversely affected by, among other things, their exposure to aircraft and automobile manufacturing, underfunded pensions, reductions in domestic and international defense spending and budgets and reduced export opportunities as a result of such reduced budgets and spending. Moreover, changing economic conditions, government regulation, intense competition, dependence on patent protection and government contracts, various legislative initiatives and changing political landscapes and national and international priorities, among other things, may affect the profitability of defense/aerospace companies.

[Table of Contents](#)

Equity Securities Risk

Stock markets are volatile, and the prices of equity securities fluctuate based on changes in a company's financial condition and overall market and economic conditions. Although common stocks have historically generated higher average total returns than fixed-income securities over the long-term, common stocks also have experienced significantly more volatility in those returns and, in certain periods, have significantly underperformed relative to fixed-income securities. An adverse event, such as an unfavorable earnings report, may depress the value of a particular common stock held by the Trust. A common stock may also decline due to factors which affect a particular industry or industries, such as labor shortages or increased production costs and competitive conditions within an industry. The value of a particular common stock held by the Trust may decline for a number of other reasons which directly relate to the issuer, such as management performance, financial leverage, the issuer's historical and prospective earnings, the value of its assets and reduced demand for its goods and services. Also, the prices of common stocks are sensitive to general movements in the stock market and a drop in the stock market may depress the price of common stocks to which the Trust has exposure. Common stock prices fluctuate for several reasons, including changes in investors' perceptions of the financial condition of an issuer or the general condition of the relevant stock market, or when political or economic events affecting the issuers occur. In addition, common stock prices may be particularly sensitive to rising interest rates, as the cost of capital rises and borrowing costs increase. Common equity securities in which the Trust may invest are structurally subordinated to preferred stock, bonds and other debt instruments in a company's capital structure in terms of priority to corporate income and are therefore inherently more risky than preferred stock or debt instruments of such issuers.

Investments in ADRs, EDRs, GDRs and other similar global instruments are generally subject to risks associated with equity securities and investments in Non-U.S. Securities. Unsponsored ADR, EDR and GDR programs are organized independently and without the cooperation of the issuer of the underlying securities. As a result, available information concerning the issuer may not be as current as for sponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs, and the prices of unsponsored ADRs, EDRs and GDRs may be more volatile than if such instruments were sponsored by the issuer.

Dividend Paying Equity Securities Risk

Dividends on common equity securities that the Trust may hold are not fixed but are declared at the discretion of an issuer's board of directors. Companies that have historically paid dividends on their securities are not required to continue to pay dividends on such securities. There is no guarantee that the issuers of the common equity securities in which the Trust invests will declare dividends in the future or that, if declared, they will remain at current levels or increase over time. Therefore, there is the possibility that such companies could reduce or eliminate the payment of dividends in the future. Dividend producing equity securities, in particular those whose market price is closely related to their yield, may exhibit greater sensitivity to interest rate changes. See "—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Interest Rate Risk." The Trust's investments in dividend producing equity securities may also limit its potential for appreciation during a broad market advance.

The prices of dividend producing equity securities can be highly volatile. Investors should not assume that the Trust's investments in these securities will necessarily reduce the volatility of the Trust's NAV or provide "protection," compared to other types of equity securities, when markets perform poorly.

Smaller Capitalization Company Risk

Smaller capitalization companies may have limited product lines or markets. They may be less financially secure than larger, more established companies. They may depend on a small number of key personnel. If a product fails or there are other adverse developments, or if management changes, the Trust's investment in a smaller capitalization company may lose substantial value. In addition, it is more difficult to get information on smaller companies, which tend to be less well known, have shorter operating histories, do not have significant ownership by large investors and are followed by relatively few securities analysts.

[Table of Contents](#)

The securities of smaller capitalization companies generally trade in lower volumes and are subject to greater and more unpredictable price changes than larger capitalization securities or the market as a whole. In addition, smaller capitalization securities may be particularly sensitive to changes in interest rates, borrowing costs and earnings. Investing in smaller capitalization securities requires a longer term view.

Small and Mid-Cap Stock Risk. The Trust may invest in companies with small or medium capitalizations. Smaller and medium capitalization stocks can be more volatile than, and perform differently from, larger capitalization stocks. There may be less trading in a smaller or medium company's stock, which means that buy and sell transactions in that stock could have a larger impact on the stock's price than is the case with larger company stocks. Smaller and medium company stocks may be particularly sensitive to changes in interest rates, borrowing costs and earnings. Smaller and medium companies may have fewer business lines; changes in any one line of business, therefore, may have a greater impact on a smaller and medium company's stock price than is the case for a larger company. As a result, the purchase or sale of more than a limited number of shares of a small and medium company may affect its market price. The Trust may need a considerable amount of time to purchase or sell its positions in these securities. In addition, smaller or medium company stocks may not be well known to the investing public.

Investments in Unseasoned Companies Risk. The Trust may invest in the securities of smaller, less seasoned companies. These investments may present greater opportunities for growth but also involve greater risks than customarily are associated with investments in securities of more established companies. Some of the companies in which the Trust may invest will be start-up companies which may have insubstantial operational or earnings history or may have limited products, markets, financial resources or management depth.

Some may also be emerging companies at the research and development stage with no products or technologies to market or approved for marketing. In addition, it is more difficult to get information on smaller companies, which tend to be less well known, have shorter operating histories, do not have significant ownership by large investors and are followed by relatively few securities analysts. Securities of emerging companies may lack an active secondary market and may be subject to more abrupt or erratic price movements than securities of larger, more established companies or stock market averages in general. Competitors of certain companies, which may or may not be in the same industry, may have substantially greater financial resources than many of the companies in which the Trust may invest.

Securities of Smaller and Emerging Growth Companies. Investment in smaller or emerging growth companies involves greater risk than is customarily associated with investments in more established companies. The securities of smaller or emerging growth companies may be subject to more abrupt or erratic market movements than larger, more established companies or the market average in general. These companies may have limited product lines, markets or financial resources, or they may be dependent on a limited management group.

While smaller or emerging growth company issuers may offer greater opportunities for capital appreciation than large cap issuers, investments in smaller or emerging growth companies may involve greater risks and thus may be considered speculative. The Advisor believes that properly selected companies of this type have the potential to increase their earnings or market valuation at a rate substantially in excess of the general growth of the economy. Full development of these companies and trends frequently takes time.

Small cap and emerging growth securities will often be traded only in the OTC market or on a regional securities exchange and may not be traded every day or in the volume typical of trading on a national securities exchange. As a result, the disposition by the Trust of portfolio securities may require the Trust to make many small sales over a lengthy period of time, or to sell these securities at a discount from market prices or during periods when, in the Advisor's judgment, such disposition is not desirable.

The process of selection and continuous supervision by the Advisor does not, of course, guarantee successful investment results; however, it does provide access to an asset class not available to the average individual due to the time and cost involved. Careful initial selection is particularly important in this area as

[Table of Contents](#)

many new enterprises have promise but lack certain of the fundamental factors necessary to prosper. Investing in small cap and emerging growth companies requires specialized research and analysis.

Small companies are generally little known to most individual investors although some may be dominant in their respective industries. The Advisor believes that relatively small companies will continue to have the opportunity to develop into significant business enterprises. The Trust may invest in securities of small issuers in the relatively early stages of business development that have a new technology, a unique or proprietary product or service, or a favorable market position. Such companies may not be counted upon to develop into major industrial companies, but the Advisor believes that eventual recognition of their special value characteristics by the investment community can provide above-average long-term growth to the portfolio.

Equity securities of specific small cap issuers may present different opportunities for long-term capital appreciation during varying portions of economic or securities market cycles, as well as during varying stages of their business development. The market valuation of small cap issuers tends to fluctuate during economic or market cycles, presenting attractive investment opportunities at various points during these cycles.

Risks Associated with Private Company Investments

Private companies are generally not subject to SEC reporting requirements, are not required to maintain their accounting records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and are not required to maintain effective internal controls over financial reporting. As a result, the Advisor may not have timely or accurate information about the business, financial condition and results of operations of the private companies in which the Trust invests. There is risk that the Trust may invest on the basis of incomplete or inaccurate information, which may adversely affect the Trust's investment performance. Private companies in which the Trust may invest may have limited financial resources, shorter operating histories, more asset concentration risk, narrower product lines and smaller market shares than larger businesses, which tend to render such private companies more vulnerable to competitors' actions and market conditions, as well as general economic downturns. These companies generally have less predictable operating results, may from time to time be parties to litigation, may be engaged in rapidly changing businesses with products subject to a substantial risk of obsolescence, and may require substantial additional capital to support their operations, finance expansion or maintain their competitive position. These companies may have difficulty accessing the capital markets to meet future capital needs, which may limit their ability to grow or to repay their outstanding indebtedness upon maturity. In addition, the Trust's investment also may be structured as pay-in-kind securities with minimal or no cash interest or dividends until the company meets certain growth and liquidity objectives. Typically, investments in private companies are in restricted securities that are not traded in public markets and subject to substantial holding periods, so that the Trust may not be able to resell some of its holdings for extended periods, which may be several years. There can be no assurance that the Trust will be able to realize the value of private company investments in a timely manner.

Private Company Management Risk. Private companies are more likely to depend on the management talents and efforts of a small group of persons; therefore, the death, disability, resignation or termination of one or more of these persons could have a material adverse impact on the company. The Trust generally does not intend to hold controlling positions in the private companies in which it invests. As a result, the Trust is subject to the risk that a company may make business decisions with which the Trust disagrees, and that the management and/or stockholders of a portfolio company may take risks or otherwise act in ways that are adverse to the Trust's interests. Due to the lack of liquidity of such private investments, the Trust may not be able to dispose of its investments in the event it disagrees with the actions of a private portfolio company and may therefore suffer a decrease in the value of the investment.

Private Company Illiquidity Risk. Securities issued by private companies are typically illiquid. If there is no readily available trading market for privately issued securities, the Trust may not be able to readily dispose of such investments at prices that approximate those at which the Trust could sell them if they were more widely traded. See "—Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk."

Table of Contents

Private Company Valuation Risk. There is typically not a readily available market value for the Trust's private investments. The Trust values private company investments in accordance with valuation guidelines adopted by the Board, that the Board, in good faith, believes are designed to accurately reflect the fair value of securities valued in accordance with such guidelines. The Trust is not required to but may utilize the services of one or more independent valuation firms to aid in determining the fair value of these investments. Valuation of private company investments may involve application of one or more of the following factors: (i) analysis of valuations of publicly traded companies in a similar line of business, (ii) analysis of valuations for comparable merger or acquisition transactions, (iii) yield analysis and (iv) discounted cash flow analysis. Due to the inherent uncertainty and subjectivity of determining the fair value of investments that do not have a readily available market value, the fair value of the Trust's private investments may differ significantly from the values that would have been used had a readily available market value existed for such investments and may differ materially from the amounts the Trust may realize on any dispositions of such investments. In addition, the impact of changes in the market environment and other events on the fair values of the Trust's investments that have no readily available market values may differ from the impact of such changes on the readily available market values for the Trust's other investments. The Trust's NAV could be adversely affected if the Trust's determinations regarding the fair value of the Trust's investments were materially higher than the values that the Trust ultimately realizes upon the disposal of such investments.

Reliance on the Advisor Risk. The Trust may enter into private investments identified by the Advisor, in which case the Trust will be more reliant upon the ability of the Advisor to identify, research, analyze, negotiate and monitor such investments, than is the case with investments in publicly traded securities. As little public information exists about many private companies, the Trust will be required to rely on the Advisor's diligence efforts to obtain adequate information to evaluate the potential risks and returns involved in investing in these companies. The costs of diligencing, negotiating and monitoring private investments will be borne by the Trust, which may reduce the Trust's returns.

Co-Investment Risk. The Trust may also co-invest in private investments sourced by third party investors unaffiliated with either the Trust or the Advisor, such as private equity firms. The Trust's ability to realize a profit on such investments will be particularly reliant on the expertise of the lead investor in the transaction. To the extent that the lead investor in such a co-investment opportunity assumes control of the management of the private company, the Trust will be reliant not only upon the lead investor's ability to research, analyze, negotiate and monitor such investments, but also on the lead investor's ability to successfully oversee the operation of the company's business. The Trust's ability to dispose of such investments is typically severely limited, both by the fact that the securities are unregistered and illiquid and by contractual restrictions that may preclude the Trust from selling such investment. Often the Trust may exit such investment only in a transaction, such as an initial public offering or sale of the company, on terms arranged by the lead investor. Such investments may be subject to additional valuation risk, as the Trust's ability to accurately determine the fair value of the investment may depend upon the receipt of information from the lead investor. The valuation assigned to such an investment through application of the Trust's valuation procedures may differ from the valuation assigned to that investment by other co-investors.

Private Company Competition Risk. Many entities may potentially compete with the Trust in making private investments. Many of these competitors are substantially larger and have considerably greater financial, technical and marketing resources than the Trust. Some competitors may have a lower cost of funds and access to funding sources that are not available to the Trust. In addition, some competitors may have higher risk tolerances or different risk assessments, which could allow them to consider a wider variety of, or different structures for, private investments than the Trust. Furthermore, many competitors are not subject to the regulatory restrictions that the Investment Company Act imposes on the Trust. As a result of this competition, the Trust may not be able to pursue attractive private investment opportunities from time to time.

Private Debt Securities Risk. Private companies in which the Trust invests may be unable to meet their obligations under debt securities held by the Trust, which may be accompanied by a deterioration in the value of

[Table of Contents](#)

any collateral and a reduction in the likelihood of the Trust realizing any guarantees it may have obtained in connection with its investment. Private companies in which the Trust invests may have, or may be permitted to incur, other debt that ranks equally with, or senior to, debt securities in which the Trust invests. Privately issued debt securities are often of below investment grade quality and frequently are unrated. See “—Fixed-Income Securities Risks” and “—Below Investment Grade Securities Risks.”

Affiliation Risk. There is a risk that the Trust may be precluded from investing in certain private companies due to regulatory implications under the Investment Company Act or other laws, rules or regulations or may be limited in the amount it can invest in the voting securities of a private company, in the size of the economic interest it can have in a private company or in the scope of influence it is permitted to have in respect of the management of a private company. Should the Trust be required to treat a private company in which it has invested as an “affiliated person” under the Investment Company Act, the Investment Company Act would impose a variety of restrictions on the Trust’s dealings with the private company. Moreover, these restrictions may arise as a result of investments by other clients of the Advisor or its affiliates in a private company. These restrictions may be detrimental to the performance of the Trust compared to what it would be if these restrictions did not exist, and could impact the universe of investable private companies for the Trust. The fact that many private companies may have a limited number of investors and a limited amount of outstanding equity heightens these risks.

Pre-IPO Securities Risk. Investments in pre-IPO securities involve greater risks than investments in shares of companies that have traded publicly on an exchange for extended periods of time. These investments may present significant opportunities for capital appreciation but involve a high degree of risk that may result in significant decreases in the value of these investments. Issuers of pre-IPO securities may not have established products, experienced management or earnings history. The Trust may not be able to sell such investments when the Advisor deems it appropriate to do so because they are not publicly traded. As such, these investments are generally considered to be illiquid until a company’s public offering (which may never occur) and are often subject to additional contractual restrictions on resale following any public offering that may prevent the Trust from selling its shares of these companies for a period of time. See “—Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk.” Market conditions, developments within a company, investor perception or regulatory decisions may adversely affect an issuer of pre-IPO securities and delay or prevent such an issuer from ultimately offering its securities to the public. If a company does issue shares in an IPO, IPOs are risky and volatile and may cause the value of the Trust’s investment to decrease significantly.

Restricted and Illiquid Investments Risk

The Trust may invest without limitation in illiquid or less liquid investments or investments in which no secondary market is readily available or which are otherwise illiquid, including private placement securities. The Trust may not be able to readily dispose of such investments at prices that approximate those at which the Trust could sell such investments if they were more widely traded and, as a result of such illiquidity, the Trust may have to sell other investments or engage in borrowing transactions if necessary to raise cash to meet its obligations. Limited liquidity can also affect the market price of investments, thereby adversely affecting the Trust’s NAV and ability to make dividend distributions. The financial markets in general, and certain segments of the mortgage-related securities markets in particular, have in recent years experienced periods of extreme secondary market supply and demand imbalance, resulting in a loss of liquidity during which market prices were suddenly and substantially below traditional measures of intrinsic value. During such periods, some investments could be sold only at arbitrary prices and with substantial losses. Periods of such market dislocation may occur again at any time. Privately issued debt securities are often of below investment grade quality, frequently are unrated and present many of the same risks as investing in below investment grade public debt securities.

Restricted securities are securities that may not be sold to the public without an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), or that may be sold only in a privately negotiated transaction or pursuant to an exemption from registration. For example, Rule 144A under the

[Table of Contents](#)

Securities Act provides an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act for the resale of certain restricted securities to qualified institutional buyers, such as the Trust. However, an insufficient number of qualified institutional buyers interested in purchasing the Rule 144A-eligible securities that the Trust holds could affect adversely the marketability of certain Rule 144A securities, and the Trust might be unable to dispose of such securities promptly or at reasonable prices. When registration is required to sell a security, the Trust may be obligated to pay all or part of the registration expenses and considerable time may pass before the Trust is permitted to sell a security under an effective registration statement. If adverse market conditions develop during this period, the Trust might obtain a less favorable price than the price that prevailed when the Trust decided to sell. The Trust may be unable to sell restricted and other illiquid investments at opportune times or prices.

Valuation Risk

The Trust is subject to valuation risk, which is the risk that one or more of the securities in which the Trust invests are valued at prices that the Trust is unable to obtain upon sale due to factors such as incomplete data, market instability or human error. The Advisor may use an independent pricing service or prices provided by dealers to value securities at their market value. Because the secondary markets for certain investments may be limited, such instruments may be difficult to value. See “Net Asset Value.” When market quotations are not available, the Advisor may price such investments pursuant to a number of methodologies, such as computer-based analytical modeling or individual security evaluations. These methodologies generate approximations of market values, and there may be significant professional disagreement about the best methodology for a particular type of financial instrument or different methodologies that might be used under different circumstances. In the absence of an actual market transaction, reliance on such methodologies is essential, but may introduce significant variances in the ultimate valuation of the Trust’s investments. Technological issues and/or errors by pricing services or other third-party service providers may also impact the Trust’s ability to value its investments and the calculation of the Trust’s NAV.

When market quotations are not readily available or are deemed to be inaccurate or unreliable, the Trust values its investments at fair value as determined in good faith pursuant to policies and procedures approved by the Board. Fair value is defined as the amount for which assets could be sold in an orderly disposition over a reasonable period of time, taking into account the nature of the asset. Fair value pricing may require determinations that are inherently subjective and inexact about the value of a security or other asset. As a result, there can be no assurance that fair value priced assets will not result in future adjustments to the prices of securities or other assets, or that fair value pricing will reflect a price that the Trust is able to obtain upon sale, and it is possible that the fair value determined for a security or other asset will be materially different from quoted or published prices, from the prices used by others for the same security or other asset and/or from the value that actually could be or is realized upon the sale of that security or other asset. For example, the Trust’s NAV could be adversely affected if the Trust’s determinations regarding the fair value of the Trust’s investments were materially higher than the values that the Trust ultimately realizes upon the disposal of such investments. Where market quotations are not readily available, valuation may require more research than for more liquid investments. In addition, elements of judgment may play a greater role in valuation in such cases than for investments with a more active secondary market because there is less reliable objective data available. The Advisor anticipates that up to approximately 25% of the Trust’s net assets (calculated at the time of investment) may be valued using fair value. This percentage may increase over the life of the Trust and may exceed 25% of the Trust’s net assets due to a number of factors, such as when the Trust nears dissolution; outflows of cash from time to time; and changes in the valuation of these investments. The Trust prices its shares daily and therefore all assets, including assets valued at fair value, are valued daily.

The Trust’s NAV per common share is a critical component in several operational matters including computation of advisory and services fees. Consequently, variance in the valuation of the Trust’s investments will impact, positively or negatively, the fees and expenses shareholders will pay.

[Table of Contents](#)

New Issues Risk

“New Issues” are IPOs of U.S. equity securities. There is no assurance that the Trust will have access to profitable IPOs and therefore investors should not rely on any past gains from IPOs as an indication of future performance of the Trust. The investment performance of the Trust during periods when it is unable to invest significantly or at all in IPOs may be lower than during periods when the Trust is able to do so. Securities issued in IPOs are subject to many of the same risks as investing in companies with smaller market capitalizations. Securities issued in IPOs have no trading history, and information about the companies may be available for very limited periods. In addition, some companies in IPOs are involved in relatively new industries or lines of business, which may not be widely understood by investors. Some of these companies may be undercapitalized or regarded as developmental stage companies, without revenues or operating income, or the near-term prospects of achieving them. Further, the prices of securities sold in IPOs may be highly volatile or may decline shortly after the IPO. When an initial public offering is brought to the market, availability may be limited and the Trust may not be able to buy any shares at the offering price, or, if it is able to buy shares, it may not be able to buy as many shares at the offering price as it would like. The limited number of shares available for trading in some IPOs may make it more difficult for the Trust to buy or sell significant amounts of shares.

Growth Stock Risk

Securities of growth companies may be more volatile since such companies usually invest a high portion of earnings in their business, and they may lack the dividends of value stocks that can cushion stock prices in a falling market. Stocks of companies the Advisor believes are fast-growing may trade at a higher multiple of current earnings than other stocks. The values of these stocks may be more sensitive to changes in current or expected earnings than the values of other stocks. Earnings disappointments often lead to sharply falling prices because investors buy growth stocks in anticipation of superior earnings growth. If the Advisor’s assessment of the prospects for a company’s earnings growth is wrong, or if the Advisor’s judgment of how other investors will value the company’s earnings growth is wrong, then the price of the company’s stock may fall or may not approach the value that the Advisor has placed on it.

Value Stock Risk

The Advisor may be wrong in its assessment of a company’s value and the stocks the Trust owns may not reach what the Advisor believes are their full values. A particular risk of the Trust’s value stock investments is that some holdings may not recover and provide the capital growth anticipated or a stock judged to be undervalued may actually be appropriately priced. Further, because the prices of value-oriented securities tend to correlate more closely with economic cycles than growth-oriented securities, they generally are more sensitive to changing economic conditions, such as changes in interest rates, corporate earnings, and industrial production. The market may not favor value-oriented stocks and may not favor equities at all. During those periods, the Trust’s relative performance may suffer.

Risks Associated with the Trust’s Options Strategy

The ability of the Trust to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust’s risk-adjusted returns is partially dependent on the successful implementation of its options strategy. Risks that may adversely affect the ability of the Trust to successfully implement its options strategy include the following:

Risks Associated with Options on Securities Generally. There are several risks associated with transactions in options on securities. For example, there are significant differences between the securities and options markets that could result in an imperfect correlation between these markets, causing a given transaction not to achieve its objectives. A decision as to whether, when and how to use options involves the exercise of skill and judgment, and even a well-conceived transaction may be unsuccessful to some degree because of market behavior or unexpected events.

Table of Contents

Risks of Writing Options. As the writer of a covered call option, the Trust forgoes, during the option's life, the opportunity to profit from increases in the market value of the security covering the call option above the sum of the premium and the strike price of the call, but has retained the risk of loss should the price of the underlying security decline. In other words, as the Trust writes covered calls over more of its portfolio, the Trust's ability to benefit from capital appreciation becomes more limited. The writer of an option has no control over the time when it may be required to fulfill its obligation as a writer of the option. Once an option writer has received an exercise notice, it cannot effect a closing purchase transaction in order to terminate its obligation under the option and must deliver the underlying security at the exercise price.

If the Trust writes call options on individual securities or index call options that include securities, in each case, that are not in the Trust's portfolio or that are not in the same proportion as securities in the Trust's portfolio, the Trust will experience loss, which theoretically could be unlimited, if the value of the individual security, index or basket of securities appreciates above the exercise price of the index option written by the Trust.

When the Trust writes put options, it bears the risk of loss if the value of the underlying stock declines below the exercise price minus the put premium. If the option is exercised, the Trust could incur a loss if it is required to purchase the stock underlying the put option at a price greater than the market price of the stock at the time of exercise plus the put premium the Trust received when it wrote the option. While the Trust's potential gain in writing a put option is limited to the premium received from the purchaser of the put option, the Trust risks a loss equal to the entire exercise price of the option minus the put premium.

Exchange-Listed Options Risks. There can be no assurance that a liquid market will exist when the Trust seeks to close out an exchange-listed option position. Reasons for the absence of a liquid secondary market on an exchange include the following: (i) there may be insufficient trading interest in certain options; (ii) restrictions may be imposed by an exchange on opening transactions or closing transactions or both; (iii) trading halts, suspensions or other restrictions may be imposed with respect to particular classes or series of options; (iv) unusual or unforeseen circumstances may interrupt normal operations on an exchange; (v) the facilities of an exchange or the OCC may not at all times be adequate to handle current trading volume; or (vi) one or more exchanges could, for economic or other reasons, decide or be compelled at some future date to discontinue the trading of options (or a particular class or series of options). If trading were discontinued, the secondary market on that exchange (or in that class or series of options) would cease to exist. However, outstanding options on that exchange that had been issued by the OCC as a result of trades on that exchange would continue to be exercisable in accordance with their terms. The Trust's ability to terminate OTC options is more limited than with exchange-traded options and may involve the risk that broker-dealers participating in such transactions will not fulfill their obligations. If the Trust were unable to close out a covered call option that it had written on a security, it would not be able to sell the underlying security unless the option expired without exercise.

The hours of trading for options may not conform to the hours during which the underlying securities are traded. To the extent that the options markets close before the markets for the underlying securities, significant price and rate movements can take place in the underlying markets that cannot be reflected in the options markets. Call options are marked to market daily and their value will be affected by changes in the value of and dividend rates of the underlying common stocks, an increase in interest rates, changes in the actual or perceived volatility of the stock market and the underlying common stocks and the remaining time to the options' expiration. Additionally, the exercise price of an option may be adjusted downward before the option's expiration as a result of the occurrence of certain corporate events affecting the underlying equity security, such as extraordinary dividends, stock splits, merger or other extraordinary distributions or events. A reduction in the exercise price of an option would reduce the Trust's capital appreciation potential on the underlying security.

Over-the-Counter Options Risk. The Trust may write (sell) unlisted OTC options to a significant extent. Options written by the Trust with respect to Non-U.S. Securities, indices or sectors generally will be OTC options. OTC options differ from exchange-listed options in that they are two-party contracts, with exercise

[Table of Contents](#)

price, premium and other terms negotiated between buyer and seller, and generally do not have as much market liquidity as exchange-listed options. The counterparties to these transactions typically will be major international banks, broker-dealers and financial institutions. The Trust may be required to treat as illiquid securities segregated with respect to certain written OTC options. The OTC options written by the Trust will not be issued, guaranteed or cleared by the OCC. In addition, the Trust's ability to terminate OTC options may be more limited than with exchange-traded options. Banks, broker-dealers or other financial institutions participating in such transactions may fail to settle a transaction in accordance with the terms of the option as written. In the event of default or insolvency of the counterparty, the Trust may be unable to liquidate an OTC option position.

Index Options Risk. The Trust may sell index put and call options from time to time. The purchaser of an index put option has the right to any depreciation in the value of the index below the exercise price of the option on or before the expiration date. The purchaser of an index call option has the right to any appreciation in the value of the index over the exercise price of the option on or before the expiration date. Because the exercise of index options is settled in cash, sellers of index call options, such as the Trust, cannot provide in advance for their potential settlement obligations by acquiring and holding the underlying securities. The Trust will lose money if it is required to pay the purchaser of an index option the difference between the cash value of the index on which the option was written and the exercise price and such difference is greater than the premium received by the Trust for writing the option. The value of index options written by the Trust, which will be priced daily, will be affected by changes in the value of and dividend rates of the underlying common stocks in the respective index, changes in the actual or perceived volatility of the stock market and the remaining time to the options' expiration. The value of the index options also may be adversely affected if the market for the index options becomes less liquid or smaller. Distributions paid by the Trust on its common shares may be derived in part from the net index option premiums it receives from selling index put and call options, less the cost of paying settlement amounts to purchasers of the options that exercise their options. Net index option premiums can vary widely over the short-term and long-term.

Limitation on Options Writing Risk. The number of call options the Trust can write is limited by the total assets the Trust holds and is further limited by the fact that all options represent 100 share lots of the underlying common stock. Furthermore, the Trust's options transactions will be subject to limitations established by each of the exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities on which such options are traded. These limitations govern the maximum number of options in each class which may be written or purchased by a single investor or group of investors acting in concert, regardless of whether the options are written or purchased on the same or different exchanges, boards of trade or other trading facilities or are held or written in one or more accounts or through one or more brokers. Thus, the number of options which the Trust may write or purchase may be affected by options written or purchased by other investment advisory clients of the Advisor. An exchange, board of trade or other trading facility may order the liquidation of positions found to be in excess of these limits, and it may impose certain other sanctions.

Tax Risk. Income on options on individual stocks will generally not be recognized by the Trust for tax purposes until an option is exercised, lapses or is subject to a "closing transaction" (as defined by applicable regulations) pursuant to which the Trust's obligations with respect to the option are otherwise terminated. If the option lapses without exercise or is otherwise subject to a closing transaction, the premiums received by the Trust from the writing of such options will generally be characterized as short-term capital gain. If an option written by the Trust is exercised, the Trust may recognize taxable gain depending on the exercise price of the option, the option premium, and the tax basis of the security underlying the option. The character of any gain on the sale of the underlying security as short-term or long-term capital gain will depend on the holding period of the Trust in the underlying security. In general, distributions received by shareholders of the Trust that are attributable to short-term capital gains recognized by the Trust from its options writing activities will be taxed to such shareholders as ordinary income and will not be eligible for the reduced tax rate applicable to qualified dividend income.

[Table of Contents](#)

Index options will generally be “marked-to-market” for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, the Trust will generally recognize gain or loss on the last day of each taxable year equal to the difference between the value of the index option on that date and the adjusted basis of the index option. The adjusted basis of the index option will consequently be increased by such gain or decreased by such loss. Any gain or loss with respect to index options will be treated as short-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 40% of such gain or loss and long-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 60% of such gain or loss. Because the mark-to-market rules may cause the Trust to recognize gain in advance of the receipt of cash, the Trust may be required to dispose of investments in order to meet its distribution requirements.

Preferred Securities Risk

There are special risks associated with investing in preferred securities, including:

Deferral Risk. Preferred securities may include provisions that permit the issuer, at its discretion, to defer distributions for a stated period without any adverse consequences to the issuer. If the Trust owns a preferred security that is deferring its distributions, the Trust may be required to report income for tax purposes although it has not yet received such income.

Subordination Risk. Preferred securities are subordinated to bonds and other debt instruments in a company’s capital structure in terms of having priority to corporate income and liquidation payments, and therefore will be subject to greater credit risk than debt instruments.

Limited Voting Rights Risk. Generally, preferred security holders (such as the Trust) have no voting rights with respect to the issuing company unless preferred dividends have been in arrears for a specified number of periods, at which time the preferred security holders may elect a number of directors to the issuer’s board. Generally, once all the arrearages have been paid, the preferred security holders no longer have voting rights. In the case of trust preferred securities, holders generally have no voting rights, except if (i) the issuer fails to pay dividends for a specified period of time or (ii) a declaration of default occurs and is continuing.

Special Redemption Rights Risk. In certain varying circumstances, an issuer of preferred securities may redeem the securities prior to a specified date. For instance, for certain types of preferred securities, a redemption may be triggered by certain changes in U.S. federal income tax or securities laws. As with call provisions, a special redemption by the issuer may negatively impact the return of the security held by the Trust.

Trust Preferred Securities Risk. Trust preferred securities are typically issued by corporations, generally in the form of interest bearing notes with preferred securities characteristics, or by an affiliated business trust of a corporation, generally in the form of beneficial interests in subordinated debentures or similarly structured securities. The trust preferred securities market consists of both fixed and adjustable coupon rate securities that are either perpetual in nature or have stated maturity dates.

Trust preferred securities are typically junior and fully subordinated liabilities of an issuer and benefit from a guarantee that is junior and fully subordinated to the other liabilities of the guarantor. In addition, trust preferred securities typically permit an issuer to defer the payment of income for five years or more without triggering an event of default. Because of their subordinated position in the capital structure of an issuer, the ability to defer payments for extended periods of time without default consequences to the issuer, and certain other features (such as restrictions on common dividend payments by the issuer or ultimate guarantor when full cumulative payments on the trust preferred securities have not been made), these trust preferred securities are often treated as close substitutes for traditional preferred securities, both by issuers and investors.

Trust preferred securities include but are not limited to trust originated preferred securities (“TOPRS®”); monthly income preferred securities (“MIPS®”); quarterly income bond securities (“QUIBS®”); quarterly income debt securities (“QUIDS®”); quarterly income preferred securities (“QUIPSSM”); corporate trust securities (“CORTS®”); public income notes (“PINES®”); and other trust preferred securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Trust preferred securities are typically issued with a final maturity date, although some are perpetual in nature. In certain instances, a final maturity date may be extended and/or the final payment of principal may be deferred at the issuer's option for a specified time without default. No redemption can typically take place unless all cumulative payment obligations have been met, although issuers may be able to engage in open-market repurchases without regard to whether all payments have been paid.

Many trust preferred securities are issued by trusts or other special purpose entities established by operating companies and are not a direct obligation of an operating company. At the time the trust or special purpose entity sells such preferred securities to investors, it purchases debt of the operating company (with terms comparable to those of the trust or special purpose entity securities), which enables the operating company to deduct for tax purposes the interest paid on the debt held by the trust or special purpose entity. The trust or special purpose entity is generally required to be treated as transparent for U.S. federal income tax purposes such that the holders of the trust preferred securities are treated as owning beneficial interests in the underlying debt of the operating company. Accordingly, payments on the trust preferred securities are treated as interest rather than dividends for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The trust or special purpose entity in turn would be a holder of the operating company's debt and would have priority with respect to the operating company's earnings and profits over the operating company's common shareholders, but would typically be subordinated to other classes of the operating company's debt. Typically a preferred share has a rating that is slightly below that of its corresponding operating company's senior debt securities.

New Types of Securities Risk. From time to time, preferred securities, including trust preferred securities, have been, and may in the future be, offered having features other than those described herein. The Trust reserves the right to invest in these securities if the Advisor believes that doing so would be consistent with the Trust's investment objectives and policies. Since the market for these instruments would be new, the Trust may have difficulty disposing of them at a suitable price and time. In addition to limited liquidity, these instruments may present other risks, such as high price volatility.

Convertible Securities Risk

Convertible securities generally offer lower interest or dividend yields than non-convertible securities of similar quality. The market values of convertible securities tend to decline as interest rates increase and, conversely, to increase as interest rates decline. However, when the market price of the common stock underlying a convertible security exceeds the conversion price, the convertible security tends to reflect the market price of the underlying common stock. As the market price of the underlying common stock declines, the convertible security tends to trade increasingly on a yield basis and thus may not decline in price to the same extent as the underlying common stock. Convertible securities rank senior to common stock in an issuer's capital structure and consequently entail less risk than the issuer's common stock.

The Trust may invest in synthetic convertible securities, which are created through a combination of separate securities that possess the two principal characteristics of a traditional convertible security. A holder of a synthetic convertible security faces the risk of a decline in the price of the security or the level of the index involved in the convertible component, causing a decline in the value of the security or instrument, such as a call option or warrant, purchased to create the synthetic convertible security. Should the price of the stock fall below the exercise price and remain there throughout the exercise period, the entire amount paid for the call option or warrant would be lost. Because a synthetic convertible security includes the income-producing component as well, the holder of a synthetic convertible security also faces the risk that interest rates will rise, causing a decline in the value of the income-producing instrument. Synthetic convertible securities are also subject to the risks associated with derivatives.

[Table of Contents](#)

Warrants Risk

If the price of the underlying stock does not rise above the exercise price before the warrant expires, the warrant generally expires without any value and the Trust loses any amount it paid for the warrant. Thus, investments in warrants may involve substantially more risk than investments in common stock. Warrants may trade in the same markets as their underlying stock; however, the price of the warrant does not necessarily move with the price of the underlying stock.

REITs Risk

To the extent that the Trust invests in real estate related investments, including REITs, it will be subject to the risks associated with owning real estate and with the real estate industry generally. These include difficulties in valuing and disposing of real estate, the possibility of declines in the value of real estate, risks related to general and local economic conditions, the possibility of adverse changes in the climate for real estate, environmental liability risks, the risk of increases in property taxes and operating expenses, possible adverse changes in zoning laws, the risk of casualty or condemnation losses, limitations on rents, the possibility of adverse changes in interest rates and in the credit markets and the possibility of borrowers paying off mortgages sooner than expected, which may lead to reinvestment of assets at lower prevailing interest rates. To the extent that the Trust invests in REITs, it will also be subject to the risk that a REIT may default on its obligations or go bankrupt. REITs are generally not taxed on income timely distributed to shareholders, provided they comply with the applicable requirements of the Code. By investing in REITs indirectly through the Trust, a shareholder will bear not only his or her proportionate share of the expenses of the Trust, but also, indirectly, similar expenses of the REITs. Mortgage REITs are pooled investment vehicles that invest the majority of their assets in real property mortgages and which generally derive income primarily from interest payments thereon. Investing in mortgage REITs involves certain risks related to investing in real property mortgages. In addition, mortgage REITs must satisfy highly technical and complex requirements in order to qualify for the favorable tax treatment accorded to REITs under the Code. No assurances can be given that a mortgage REIT in which the Trust invests will be able to continue to qualify as a REIT or that complying with the REIT requirements under the Code will not adversely affect such REIT's ability to execute its business plan.

Many REITs focus on particular types of properties or properties which are especially suited for certain uses, and those REITs are affected by the risks which impact the users of their properties. For REITs that own healthcare facilities, for example, the physical characteristics of these properties and their operations are highly regulated, and those regulations often require capital expenditures or restrict the profits realizable from these properties. Some of these properties are also highly dependent upon Medicare and Medicaid payments, which are subject to changes in governmental budgets and policies. These properties may experience losses if their tenants receive lower Medicare or Medicaid rates.

Master Limited Partnerships Risk

Investments in publicly traded MLPs, which are limited partnerships or limited liability companies taxable as partnerships, involve some risks that differ from an investment in the common stock of a corporation. MLPs may derive income and gains from the exploration, development, mining or production, processing, refining, transportation (including pipelines transporting gas, oil, or products thereof), or the marketing of any mineral or natural resources. MLPs generally have two classes of owners, the general partner and limited partners. When investing in an MLP, the Trust generally purchases publicly traded common units issued to limited partners of the MLP. The general partner is typically owned by a major energy company, an investment fund, the direct management of the MLP or is an entity owned by one or more of such parties. The general partner may be structured as a private or publicly traded corporation or other entity. The general partner typically controls the operations and management of the MLP through an up to 2% equity interest in the MLP plus, in many cases, ownership of common units and subordinated units. Limited partners own the remainder of the partnership,

Table of Contents

through ownership of common units, and have a limited role in the partnership's operations and management. As compared to common stockholders of a corporation, holders of MLP common units have more limited control and limited rights to vote on matters affecting the partnership.

MLPs are typically structured such that common units and general partner interests have first priority to receive quarterly cash distributions up to an established minimum amount ("minimum quarterly distributions" or "MQD"). Common and general partner interests also accrue arrearages in distributions to the extent the MQD is not paid. Once common and general partner interests have been paid, subordinated units receive distributions of up to the MQD; however, subordinated units do not accrue arrearages. Distributable cash in excess of the MQD paid to both common and subordinated units is distributed to both common and subordinated units generally on a pro rata basis. The general partner is also eligible to receive incentive distributions if the general partner operates the business in a manner which results in distributions paid per common unit surpassing specified target levels. As the general partner increases cash distributions to the limited partners, the general partner receives an increasingly higher percentage of the incremental cash distributions. A common arrangement provides that the general partner can reach a tier where it receives 50% of every incremental dollar paid to common and subordinated unit holders. These incentive distributions encourage the general partner to streamline costs, increase capital expenditures and acquire assets in order to increase the partnership's cash flow and raise the quarterly cash distribution in order to reach higher tiers. Such results benefit all security holders of the MLP.

MLP common units represent a limited partnership interest in the MLP. Common units are listed and traded on U.S. securities exchanges, with their value fluctuating predominantly based on prevailing market conditions and the success of the MLP. The Trust will generally purchase common units in market transactions. Unlike owners of common stock of a corporation, owners of common units have limited voting rights and have no ability to elect directors. In the event of liquidation, common units have preference over subordinated units, but not over debt or preferred units, to the remaining assets of the MLP.

Investment Companies and ETFs Risk

Subject to the limitations set forth in the Investment Company Act and the Trust's governing documents or as otherwise permitted by the SEC, the Trust may acquire shares in other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, some of which may be affiliated investment companies. The market value of the shares of other investment companies may differ from their NAV. As an investor in investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, the Trust would bear its ratable share of that entity's expenses, including its investment advisory and administration fees, while continuing to pay its own advisory and administration fees and other expenses (to the extent not offset by the Advisor through waivers). As a result, shareholders will be absorbing duplicate levels of fees with respect to investments in other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs (to the extent not offset by the Advisor through waivers).

The securities of other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, in which the Trust may invest may be leveraged. As a result, the Trust may be indirectly exposed to leverage through an investment in such securities. An investment in securities of other investment companies, including ETFs or BDCs, that use leverage may expose the Trust to higher volatility in the market value of such securities and the possibility that the Trust's long-term returns on such securities (and, indirectly, the long-term returns of the Trust's common shares) will be diminished.

ETFs are generally not actively managed and may be affected by a general decline in market segments relating to its index. An ETF typically invests in securities included in, or representative of, its index regardless of their investment merits and does not attempt to take defensive positions in declining markets.

[Table of Contents](#)

Fixed-Income Securities Risks

Fixed-income securities in which the Trust may invest are generally subject to the following risks:

Interest Rate Risk. The market value of bonds and other fixed-income securities changes in response to interest rate changes and other factors. Interest rate risk is the risk that prices of bonds and other fixed-income securities will increase as interest rates fall and decrease as interest rates rise. The Trust may be subject to a greater risk of rising interest rates due to the current period of historically low interest rates. The U.S. Federal Reserve recently increased the federal funds rate and has indicated that it may raise the federal funds rate further and tighten the monetary supply in the near future. Therefore, there is a risk that interest rates will rise, which will likely drive down prices of bonds and other fixed-income securities. The magnitude of these fluctuations in the market price of bonds and other fixed-income securities is generally greater for those securities with longer maturities. Fluctuations in the market price of the Trust's investments will not affect interest income derived from instruments already owned by the Trust, but will be reflected in the Trust's NAV. The Trust may lose money if short-term or long-term interest rates rise sharply in a manner not anticipated by the Advisor. To the extent the Trust invests in debt securities that may be prepaid at the option of the obligor (such as mortgage-related securities), the sensitivity of such securities to changes in interest rates may increase (to the detriment of the Trust) when interest rates rise. Moreover, because rates on certain floating rate debt securities typically reset only periodically, changes in prevailing interest rates (and particularly sudden and significant changes) can be expected to cause some fluctuations in the NAV of the Trust to the extent that it invests in floating rate debt securities. These basic principles of bond prices also apply to U.S. Government securities. A security backed by the "full faith and credit" of the U.S. Government is guaranteed only as to its stated interest rate and face value at maturity, not its current market price. Just like other fixed-income securities, government-guaranteed securities will fluctuate in value when interest rates change.

During periods in which the Trust may use leverage, such use of leverage will tend to increase the Trust's interest rate risk. The Trust may utilize certain strategies, including taking positions in futures or interest rate swaps, for the purpose of reducing the interest rate sensitivity of fixed-income securities held by the Trust and decreasing the Trust's exposure to interest rate risk. The Trust is not required to hedge its exposure to interest rate risk and may choose not to do so. In addition, there is no assurance that any attempts by the Trust to reduce interest rate risk will be successful or that any hedges that the Trust may establish will perfectly correlate with movements in interest rates.

The Trust may invest in variable and floating rate debt instruments, which generally are less sensitive to interest rate changes than longer duration fixed rate instruments, but may decline in value in response to rising interest rates if, for example, the rates at which they pay interest do not rise as much, or as quickly, as market interest rates in general. Conversely, variable and floating rate instruments generally will not increase in value if interest rates decline. The Trust also may invest in inverse floating rate debt securities, which may decrease in value if interest rates increase, and which also may exhibit greater price volatility than fixed rate debt obligations with similar credit quality. To the extent the Trust holds variable or floating rate instruments, a decrease (or, in the case of inverse floating rate securities, an increase) in market interest rates will adversely affect the income received from such securities, which may adversely affect the NAV of the Trust's common shares.

Issuer Risk. The value of fixed-income securities may decline for a number of reasons which directly relate to the issuer, such as management performance, financial leverage, reduced demand for the issuer's goods and services, historical and prospective earnings of the issuer and the value of the assets of the issuer.

Credit Risk. Credit risk is the risk that one or more fixed-income securities in the Trust's portfolio will decline in price or fail to pay interest or principal when due because the issuer of the security experiences a decline in its financial status. Credit risk is increased when a portfolio security is downgraded or the perceived creditworthiness of the issuer deteriorates. To the extent the Trust invests in below investment grade securities, it will be exposed to a greater amount of credit risk than a fund that only invests in investment grade securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

See “—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.” In addition, to the extent the Trust uses credit derivatives, such use will expose it to additional risk in the event that the bonds underlying the derivatives default. The degree of credit risk depends on the issuer’s financial condition and on the terms of the securities.

Prepayment Risk. During periods of declining interest rates, borrowers may exercise their option to prepay principal earlier than scheduled. For fixed rate securities, such payments often occur during periods of declining interest rates, forcing the Trust to reinvest in lower yielding securities, resulting in a possible decline in the Trust’s income and distributions to shareholders. This is known as prepayment or “call” risk. Below investment grade securities frequently have call features that allow the issuer to redeem the security at dates prior to its stated maturity at a specified price (typically greater than par) only if certain prescribed conditions are met (i.e., “call protection”). For premium bonds (bonds acquired at prices that exceed their par or principal value) purchased by the Trust, prepayment risk may be enhanced.

Reinvestment Risk. Reinvestment risk is the risk that income from the Trust’s portfolio will decline if the Trust invests the proceeds from matured, traded or called fixed-income securities at market interest rates that are below the Trust portfolio’s current earnings rate.

Duration and Maturity Risk. The Trust has no set policy regarding portfolio maturity or duration of the fixed-income securities it may hold. The Advisor may seek to adjust the portfolio’s duration or maturity based on its assessment of current and projected market conditions and all other factors that the Advisor deems relevant.

Spread Risk. Wider credit spreads and decreasing market values typically represent a deterioration of a debt security’s credit soundness and a perceived greater likelihood or risk of default by the issuer.

Any decisions as to the targeted duration or maturity of any particular category of investments or of the Trust’s portfolio generally will be made based on all pertinent market factors at any given time. The Trust may incur costs in seeking to adjust the portfolio’s average duration or maturity. There can be no assurance that the Advisor’s assessment of current and projected market conditions will be correct or that any strategy to adjust the portfolio’s duration or maturity will be successful at any given time. In general, the longer the duration of any fixed-income securities in the Trust’s portfolio, the more exposure the Trust will have to the interest rate risks described above.

Corporate Bonds Risk

The market value of a corporate bond generally may be expected to rise and fall inversely with interest rates. The market value of intermediate and longer term corporate bonds is generally more sensitive to changes in interest rates than is the market value of shorter term corporate bonds. The market value of a corporate bond also may be affected by factors directly related to the issuer, such as investors’ perceptions of the creditworthiness of the issuer, the issuer’s financial performance, perceptions of the issuer in the market place, performance of management of the issuer, the issuer’s capital structure and use of financial leverage and demand for the issuer’s goods and services. Certain risks associated with investments in corporate bonds are described elsewhere in this prospectus in further detail, including under “—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Credit Risk,” “—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Interest Rate Risk,” “—Fixed-Income Securities Risks—Prepayment Risk,” “—Inflation Risk” and “—Deflation Risk.” There is a risk that the issuers of corporate bonds may not be able to meet their obligations on interest or principal payments at the time called for by an instrument. Corporate bonds of below investment grade quality are often high risk and have speculative characteristics and may be particularly susceptible to adverse issuer-specific developments. Corporate bonds of below investment grade quality are subject to the risks described herein under “—Below Investment Grade Securities Risk.”

[Table of Contents](#)

Below Investment Grade Securities Risk

The Trust may invest in securities that are rated, at the time of investment, below investment grade quality (rated Ba/BB or below, or judged to be of comparable quality by the Advisor), which are commonly referred to as “high yield” or “junk” bonds and are regarded as predominantly speculative with respect to the issuer’s capacity to pay interest and repay principal when due. The value of high yield, lower quality bonds is affected by the creditworthiness of the issuers of the securities and by general economic and specific industry conditions. Issuers of high yield bonds are not perceived to be as strong financially as those with higher credit ratings. These issuers are more vulnerable to financial setbacks and recession than more creditworthy issuers, which may impair their ability to make interest and principal payments. Lower grade securities may be particularly susceptible to economic downturns. It is likely that an economic recession could severely disrupt the market for such securities and may have an adverse impact on the value of such securities. In addition, it is likely that any such economic downturn could adversely affect the ability of the issuers of such securities to repay principal and pay interest thereon and increase the incidence of default for such securities. See “—Risk Associated with Recent Market Events.”

Lower grade securities, though high yielding, are characterized by high risk. They may be subject to certain risks with respect to the issuing entity and to greater market fluctuations than certain lower yielding, higher rated securities. The secondary market for lower grade securities may be less liquid than that for higher rated securities. Adverse conditions could make it difficult at times for the Trust to sell certain securities or could result in lower prices than those used in calculating the Trust’s NAV. Because of the substantial risks associated with investments in lower grade securities, you could lose money on your investment in common shares of the Trust, both in the short-term and the long-term.

The prices of fixed-income securities generally are inversely related to interest rate changes; however, below investment grade securities historically have been somewhat less sensitive to interest rate changes than higher quality securities of comparable maturity because credit quality is also a significant factor in the valuation of lower grade securities. On the other hand, an increased rate environment results in increased borrowing costs generally, which may impair the credit quality of low-grade issuers and thus have a more significant effect on the value of some lower grade securities. In addition, the current low rate environment has expanded the historic universe of buyers of lower grade securities as traditional investment grade oriented investors have been forced to accept more risk in order to maintain income. As rates rise, these recent entrants to the low-grade securities market may exit the market and reduce demand for lower grade securities, potentially resulting in greater price volatility.

The ratings of Moody’s, S&P, Fitch and other rating agencies represent their opinions as to the quality of the obligations which they undertake to rate. Ratings are relative and subjective and, although ratings may be useful in evaluating the safety of interest and principal payments, they do not evaluate the market value risk of such obligations. Although these ratings may be an initial criterion for selection of portfolio investments, the Advisor also will independently evaluate these securities and the ability of the issuers of such securities to pay interest and principal. To the extent that the Trust invests in lower grade securities that have not been rated by a rating agency, the Trust’s ability to achieve its investment objectives will be more dependent on the Advisor’s credit analysis than would be the case when the Trust invests in rated securities.

The Trust may invest in securities rated in the lower rating categories (rated as low as D, or unrated but judged to be of comparable quality by the Advisor). For these securities, the risks associated with below investment grade instruments are more pronounced. The Trust may purchase stressed or distressed securities, including securities that are in default or the issuers of which are in bankruptcy, which involve heightened risks. See “—Distressed and Defaulted Securities Risk.”

[Table of Contents](#)

Distressed and Defaulted Securities Risk

Investments in the securities of financially distressed issuers are speculative and involve substantial risks. These securities may present a substantial risk of default or may be in default at the time of investment. The Trust may incur additional expenses to the extent it is required to seek recovery upon a default in the payment of principal or interest on its portfolio holdings. In any reorganization or liquidation proceeding relating to a portfolio company, the Trust may lose its entire investment or may be required to accept cash or securities with a value less than its original investment. Among the risks inherent in investments in a troubled entity is that it frequently may be difficult to obtain information as to the true financial condition of such issuer. The Advisor's judgment about the credit quality of the issuer and the relative value and liquidity of its securities may prove to be wrong. Distressed securities and any securities received in an exchange for such securities may be subject to restrictions on resale.

Yield and Ratings Risk

The yields on debt obligations are dependent on a variety of factors, including general market conditions, conditions in the particular market for the obligation, the financial condition of the issuer, the size of the offering, the maturity of the obligation and the ratings of the issue. The ratings of Moody's, S&P and Fitch, which are described in Appendix A to the SAI, represent their respective opinions as to the quality of the obligations they undertake to rate. Ratings, however, are general and are not absolute standards of quality. Consequently, obligations with the same rating, maturity and interest rate may have different market prices. Subsequent to its purchase by the Trust, a rated security may cease to be rated. The Advisor will consider such an event in determining whether the Trust should continue to hold the security.

Unrated Securities Risk

Because the Trust may purchase securities that are not rated by any rating organization, the Advisor may, after assessing their credit quality, internally assign ratings to certain of those securities in categories similar to those of rating organizations. Some unrated securities may not have an active trading market or may be difficult to value, which means the Trust might have difficulty selling them promptly at an acceptable price. To the extent that the Trust invests in unrated securities, the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives will be more dependent on the Advisor's credit analysis than would be the case when the Trust invests in rated securities.

U.S. Government Securities Risk

U.S. Government debt securities generally involve lower levels of credit risk than other types of fixed-income securities of similar maturities, although, as a result, the yields available from U.S. Government debt securities are generally lower than the yields available from such other securities. Like other fixed-income securities, the values of U.S. Government securities change as interest rates fluctuate.

Insolvency of Issuers of Indebtedness Risk

Various laws enacted for the protection of creditors may apply to indebtedness in which the Trust invests. The information in this and the following paragraph is applicable with respect to U.S. issuers subject to U.S. federal bankruptcy law. Insolvency considerations may differ with respect to other issuers. If, in a lawsuit brought by an unpaid creditor or representative of creditors of an issuer of indebtedness, a court were to find that the issuer did not receive fair consideration or reasonably equivalent value for incurring the indebtedness and that, after giving effect to such indebtedness, the issuer (i) was insolvent, (ii) was engaged in a business for which the remaining assets of such issuer constituted unreasonably small capital or (iii) intended to incur, or believed that it would incur, debts beyond its ability to pay such debts as they mature, such court could determine to invalidate, in whole or in part, such indebtedness as a fraudulent conveyance, to subordinate such indebtedness to existing or future creditors of such issuer, or to recover amounts previously paid by such issuer in satisfaction of

Table of Contents

such indebtedness. The measure of insolvency for purposes of the foregoing will vary. Generally, an issuer would be considered insolvent at a particular time if the sum of its debts was then greater than all of its property at a fair valuation, or if the present fair saleable value of its assets was then less than the amount that would be required to pay its probable liabilities on its existing debts as they became absolute and matured. There can be no assurance as to what standard a court would apply in order to determine whether the issuer was “insolvent” after giving effect to the incurrence of the indebtedness in which the Trust invested or that, regardless of the method of valuation, a court would not determine that the issuer was “insolvent” upon giving effect to such incurrence. In addition, in the event of the insolvency of an issuer of indebtedness in which the Trust invests, payments made on such indebtedness could be subject to avoidance as a “preference” if made within a certain period of time (which may be as long as one year) before insolvency.

The Trust does not anticipate that it will engage in conduct that would form the basis for a successful cause of action based upon fraudulent conveyance, preference or subordination. There can be no assurance, however, as to whether any lending institution or other party from which the Trust may acquire such indebtedness engaged in any such conduct (or any other conduct that would subject such indebtedness and the Trust to insolvency laws) and, if it did, as to whether such creditor claims could be asserted in a U.S. court (or in the courts of any other country) against the Trust.

Indebtedness consisting of obligations of non-U.S. issuers may be subject to various laws enacted in the countries of their issuance for the protection of creditors. These insolvency considerations will differ depending on the country in which each issuer is located or domiciled and may differ depending on whether the issuer is a non-sovereign or a sovereign entity.

Non-U.S. Securities Risk

The Trust may invest in Non-U.S. Securities. Such investments involve certain risks not involved in domestic investments. Securities markets in foreign countries often are not as developed, efficient or liquid as securities markets in the United States and, therefore, the prices of Non-U.S. Securities can be more volatile. Certain foreign countries may impose restrictions on the ability of issuers of Non-U.S. Securities to make payments of principal and interest or dividends to investors located outside the country. In addition, the Trust will be subject to risks associated with adverse political and economic developments in foreign countries, which could cause the Trust to lose money on its investments in Non-U.S. Securities. The Trust will be subject to additional risks if it invests in Non-U.S. Securities, which include seizure or nationalization of foreign deposits. Non-U.S. Securities may trade on days when the Trust’s common shares are not priced or traded.

Rules adopted under the Investment Company Act permit the Trust to maintain its Non-U.S. Securities and foreign currency in the custody of certain eligible non-U.S. banks and securities depositories, and the Trust generally holds its Non-U.S. Securities and foreign currency in foreign banks and securities depositories. Some foreign banks and securities depositories may be recently organized or new to the foreign custody business. In addition, there may be limited or no regulatory oversight of their operations. Also, the laws of certain countries limit the Trust’s ability to recover its assets if a foreign bank, depository or issuer of a security, or any of their agents, goes bankrupt. In addition, it is often more expensive for the Trust to buy, sell and hold securities in certain foreign markets than in the United States. The increased expense of investing in foreign markets reduces the amount the Trust can earn on its investments and typically results in a higher operating expense ratio for the Trust than for investment companies invested only in the United States.

Certain banks in foreign countries may not be eligible sub-custodians for the Trust, in which event the Trust may be precluded from purchasing securities in certain foreign countries in which it otherwise would invest or the Trust may incur additional costs and delays in providing transportation and custody services for such securities outside of such countries. The Trust may encounter difficulties in effecting portfolio transactions on a timely basis with respect to any securities of issuers held outside their countries.

Table of Contents

The economies of certain foreign markets may not compare favorably with the economy of the United States with respect to such issues as growth of gross national product, reinvestment of capital, resources and balance of payments position. Certain foreign economies may rely heavily on particular industries or foreign capital and are more vulnerable to diplomatic developments, the imposition of economic sanctions against a particular country or countries, changes in international trading patterns, trade barriers and other protectionist or retaliatory measures. Investments in foreign markets may also be adversely affected by governmental actions such as the imposition of capital controls, nationalization of companies or industries, expropriation of assets or the imposition of punitive taxes. In addition, the governments of certain countries may prohibit or impose substantial restrictions on foreign investments in their capital markets or in certain industries. Any of these actions could severely affect securities prices or impair the Trust's ability to purchase or sell Non-U.S. Securities or transfer the Trust's assets or income back into the United States, or otherwise adversely affect the Trust's operations. In addition, the U.S. Government has from time to time in the past imposed restrictions, through penalties and otherwise, on foreign investments by U.S. investors such as the Trust. If such restrictions should be reinstituted, it might become necessary for the Trust to invest all or substantially all of its assets in U.S. securities.

Other potential foreign market risks include foreign exchange controls, difficulties in pricing securities, defaults on foreign government securities, difficulties in enforcing legal judgments in foreign courts and political and social instability. Diplomatic and political developments, including rapid and adverse political changes, social instability, regional conflicts, terrorism and war, could affect the economies, industries and securities and currency markets, and the value of the Trust's investments, in non-U.S. countries. These factors are extremely difficult, if not impossible, to predict and take into account with respect to the Trust's investments.

In general, less information is publicly available with respect to foreign issuers than is available with respect to U.S. companies. Accounting standards in other countries are not necessarily the same as in the United States. If the accounting standards in another country do not require as much detail as U.S. accounting standards, it may be harder for the Advisor to completely and accurately determine a company's financial condition.

Many foreign governments do not supervise and regulate stock exchanges, brokers and the sale of securities to the same extent as such regulations exist in the United States. They also may not have laws to protect investors that are comparable to U.S. securities laws. For example, some foreign countries may have no laws or rules against insider trading. Insider trading occurs when a person buys or sells a company's securities based on material non-public information about that company. In addition, some countries may have legal systems that may make it difficult for the Trust to vote proxies, exercise shareholder rights, and pursue legal remedies with respect to its Non-U.S. Securities.

Settlement and clearance procedures in certain foreign markets differ significantly from those in the United States. Foreign settlement and clearance procedures and trade regulations also may involve certain risks (such as delays in payment for or delivery of securities) not typically associated with the settlement of U.S. investments. Communications between the United States and foreign countries may be unreliable, increasing the risk of delayed settlements or losses of security certificates in markets that still rely on physical settlement. At times, settlements in certain foreign countries have not kept pace with the number of securities transactions. These problems may make it difficult for the Trust to carry out transactions. If the Trust cannot settle or is delayed in settling a purchase of securities, it may miss attractive investment opportunities and certain of its assets may be uninvested with no return earned thereon for some period. If the Trust cannot settle or is delayed in settling a sale of securities, it may lose money if the value of the security then declines or, if it has contracted to sell the security to another party, the Trust could be liable for any losses incurred.

While the volume of transactions effected on foreign stock exchanges has increased in recent years, it remains appreciably below that of the NYSE. Accordingly, the Trust's Non-U.S. Securities may be less liquid and their prices may be more volatile than comparable investments in securities in U.S. companies.

Table of Contents

A number of countries have authorized the formation of closed-end investment companies to facilitate indirect foreign investment in their capital markets. The Investment Company Act restricts the Trust's investment in securities of other closed-end investment companies. This restriction on investments in securities of closed-end investment companies may limit opportunities for the Trust to invest indirectly in certain smaller capital markets. Shares of certain closed-end investment companies may at times be acquired only at market prices representing premiums to their NAVs. If the Trust acquires shares in closed-end investment companies, shareholders would bear both their proportionate share of the Trust's expenses (including investment advisory fees) and, indirectly, the expenses of such closed-end investment companies. The Trust also may seek, at its own cost, to create its own investment entities under the laws of certain countries.

Emerging Markets Risk

The Trust may invest in Non-U.S. Securities of issuers in so-called "emerging markets" (or lesser developed countries). Such investments are particularly speculative and entail all of the risks of investing in Non-U.S. Securities but to a heightened degree. "Emerging market" countries generally include every nation in the world except developed countries, that is, the United States, Canada, Japan, Australia, New Zealand and most countries located in Western Europe. Investments in the securities of issuers domiciled in countries with emerging capital markets involve certain additional risks that do not generally apply to investments in securities of issuers in more developed capital markets, such as (i) low or non-existent trading volume, resulting in a lack of liquidity and increased volatility in prices for such securities, as compared to securities of comparable issuers in more developed capital markets; (ii) uncertain national policies and social, political and economic instability, increasing the potential for expropriation of assets, confiscatory taxation, high rates of inflation or unfavorable diplomatic developments; (iii) possible fluctuations in exchange rates, differing legal systems and the existence or possible imposition of exchange controls, custodial restrictions or other foreign or U.S. governmental laws or restrictions applicable to such investments; (iv) national policies that may limit the Trust's investment opportunities such as restrictions on investment in issuers or industries deemed sensitive to national interests; and (v) the lack or relatively early development of legal structures governing private and foreign investments and private property.

Foreign investment in certain emerging market countries may be restricted or controlled to varying degrees. These restrictions or controls may at times limit or preclude foreign investment in certain emerging market issuers and increase the costs and expenses of the Trust. Certain emerging market countries require governmental approval prior to investments by foreign persons in a particular issuer, limit the amount of investment by foreign persons in a particular issuer, limit the investment by foreign persons only to a specific class of securities of an issuer that may have less advantageous rights than the classes available for purchase by domiciliaries of the countries and/or impose additional taxes on foreign investors.

Emerging markets are more likely to experience hyperinflation and currency devaluations, which adversely affect returns to U.S. investors. In addition, many emerging markets have far lower trading volumes and less liquidity than developed markets. Since these markets are often small, they may be more likely to suffer sharp and frequent price changes or long-term price depression because of adverse publicity, investor perceptions or the actions of a few large investors. In addition, traditional measures of investment value used in the United States, such as price to earnings ratios, may not apply to certain small markets. Also, there may be less publicly available information about issuers in emerging markets than would be available about issuers in more developed capital markets, and such issuers may not be subject to accounting, auditing and financial reporting standards and requirements comparable to those to which U.S. companies are subject. In certain countries with emerging capital markets, reporting standards vary widely.

Many emerging markets have histories of political instability and abrupt changes in policies and these countries may lack the social, political and economic stability characteristic of more developed countries. As a result, their governments are more likely to take actions that are hostile or detrimental to private enterprise or foreign investment than those of more developed countries, including expropriation of assets, confiscatory

Table of Contents

taxation, high rates of inflation or unfavorable diplomatic developments. In the past, governments of such nations have expropriated substantial amounts of private property, and most claims of the property owners have never been fully settled. There is no assurance that such expropriations will not reoccur. In such an event, it is possible that the Trust could lose the entire value of its investments in the affected market. Some countries have pervasiveness of corruption and crime that may hinder investments. Certain emerging markets may also face other significant internal or external risks, including the risk of war, and ethnic, religious and racial conflicts. In addition, governments in many emerging market countries participate to a significant degree in their economies and securities markets, which may impair investment and economic growth. National policies that may limit the Trust's investment opportunities include restrictions on investment in issuers or industries deemed sensitive to national interests. In such a dynamic environment, there can be no assurance that any or all of these capital markets will continue to present viable investment opportunities for the Trust.

Emerging markets may also have differing legal systems and the existence or possible imposition of exchange controls, custodial restrictions or other foreign or U.S. governmental laws or restrictions applicable to such investments. Sometimes, they may lack or be in the relatively early development of legal structures governing private and foreign investments and private property. In addition to withholding taxes on investment income, some countries with emerging markets may impose differential capital gains taxes on foreign investors.

Practices in relation to settlement of securities transactions in emerging markets involve higher risks than those in developed markets, in part because the Trust will need to use brokers and counterparties that are less well capitalized, and custody and registration of assets in some countries may be unreliable. The possibility of fraud, negligence, undue influence being exerted by the issuer or refusal to recognize ownership exists in some emerging markets, and, along with other factors, could result in ownership registration being completely lost. The Trust would absorb any loss resulting from such registration problems and may have no successful claim for compensation. In addition, communications between the United States and emerging market countries may be unreliable, increasing the risk of delayed settlements or losses of security certificates.

Foreign Currency Risk

Because the Trust may invest in securities denominated or quoted in currencies other than the U.S. dollar, changes in foreign currency exchange rates may affect the value of securities held by the Trust and the unrealized appreciation or depreciation of investments. Currencies of certain countries may be volatile and therefore may affect the value of securities denominated in such currencies, which means that the Trust's NAV could decline as a result of changes in the exchange rates between foreign currencies and the U.S. dollar. The Advisor may, but is not required to, elect for the Trust to seek to protect itself from changes in currency exchange rates through hedging transactions depending on market conditions. In addition, certain countries, particularly emerging market countries, may impose foreign currency exchange controls or other restrictions on the transferability, repatriation or convertibility of currency.

LIBOR and Other Reference Rates Risk

The Trust's investments and payment obligations may be based on floating rates, such as LIBOR, European Interbank Offer Rate ("EURIBOR"), Sterling Overnight Interbank Average Rate ("SONIA"), and other similar types of reference rates ("Reference Rates"). The elimination of a Reference Rate or any other changes or reforms to the determination or supervision of Reference Rates could have an adverse impact on the market for, or value of, any securities or payments linked to those Reference Rates. In addition, any substitute Reference Rate and any pricing adjustments imposed by a regulator or by counterparties or otherwise may adversely affect the Trust's performance and/or NAV.

In 2017, the Alternative Reference Rates Committee, a group of large U.S. banks working with the Federal Reserve, announced its selection of the Secured Overnight Financing Rate ("SOFR"), which is intended to be a broad measure of secured overnight U.S. Treasury repo rates, as an appropriate replacement for LIBOR. The

[Table of Contents](#)

Federal Reserve Bank of New York began publishing the SOFR in 2018, with the expectation that it could be used on a voluntary basis in new instruments and transactions. Bank working groups and regulators in other countries have suggested other alternatives for their markets, including the SONIA in England.

In 2017, the head of the United Kingdom's Financial Conduct Authority announced a desire to phase out the use of LIBOR by the end of 2021. There remains uncertainty regarding the future utilization of LIBOR and the nature of any replacement Reference Rate. As such, the potential effect of a transition away from LIBOR on the Trust or the financial instruments in which the Trust invests cannot yet be determined.

Leverage Risk

The use of leverage creates an opportunity for increased common share net investment income dividends, but also creates risks for the holders of common shares. The Trust cannot assure you that the use of leverage, if employed, will result in a higher yield on the common shares. Any leveraging strategy the Trust employs may not be successful.

Leverage involves risks and special considerations for common shareholders, including:

- the likelihood of greater volatility of NAV, market price and dividend rate of the common shares than a comparable portfolio without leverage;
- the risk that fluctuations in interest rates or dividend rates on any leverage that the Trust must pay will reduce the return to the common shareholders;
- the effect of leverage in a declining market, which is likely to cause a greater decline in the NAV of the common shares than if the Trust were not leveraged, which may result in a greater decline in the market price of the common shares;
- when the Trust uses financial leverage, the management fee payable to the Advisor will be higher than if the Trust did not use leverage; and
- leverage may increase operating costs, which may reduce total return.

Any decline in the NAV of the Trust's investments will be borne entirely by the holders of common shares. Therefore, if the market value of the Trust's portfolio declines, leverage will result in a greater decrease in NAV to the holders of common shares than if the Trust were not leveraged. This greater NAV decrease will also tend to cause a greater decline in the market price for the common shares. While the Trust may from time to time consider reducing any outstanding leverage in response to actual or anticipated changes in interest rates in an effort to mitigate the increased volatility of current income and NAV associated with leverage, there can be no assurance that the Trust will actually reduce any outstanding leverage in the future or that any reduction, if undertaken, will benefit the holders of common shares. Changes in the future direction of interest rates are very difficult to predict accurately. If the Trust were to reduce any outstanding leverage based on a prediction about future changes to interest rates, and that prediction turned out to be incorrect, the reduction in any outstanding leverage would likely operate to reduce the income and/or total returns to holders of common shares relative to the circumstance where the Trust had not reduced any of its outstanding leverage. The Trust may decide that this risk outweighs the likelihood of achieving the desired reduction to volatility in income and share price if the prediction were to turn out to be correct, and determine not to reduce any of its outstanding leverage as described above.

The Trust currently does not intend to borrow money or issue debt securities or preferred shares, but may in the future borrow funds from banks or other financial institutions, or issue debt securities or preferred shares, as described in this prospectus. Certain types of leverage the Trust may use may result in the Trust being subject to covenants relating to asset coverage and portfolio composition requirements. The Trust may be subject to certain restrictions on investments imposed by guidelines of one or more rating agencies, which may issue ratings for

Table of Contents

any debt securities or preferred shares issued by the Trust. The terms of any borrowings or these rating agency guidelines may impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed by the Investment Company Act. The Advisor does not believe that these covenants or guidelines will impede it from managing the Trust's portfolio in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies.

The Trust may invest in the securities of other investment companies. Such investment companies may also be leveraged, and will therefore be subject to the leverage risks described above. This additional leverage may in certain market conditions reduce the NAV of the Trust's common shares and the returns to the holders of common shares.

Repurchase Agreements Risk

Subject to its investment objectives and policies, the Trust may invest in repurchase agreements. Repurchase agreements typically involve the acquisition by the Trust of fixed-income securities from a selling financial institution such as a bank, savings and loan association or broker-dealer. The agreement provides that the Trust will sell the securities back to the institution at a fixed time in the future. The Trust does not bear the risk of a decline in the value of the underlying security unless the seller defaults under its repurchase obligation. In the event of the bankruptcy or other default of a seller of a repurchase agreement, the Trust could experience both delays in liquidating the underlying securities and losses, including possible decline in the value of the underlying security during the period in which the Trust seeks to enforce its rights thereto; possible lack of access to income on the underlying security during this period; and expenses of enforcing its rights. While repurchase agreements involve certain risks not associated with direct investments in fixed-income securities, the Trust follows procedures approved by the Board that are designed to minimize such risks. In addition, the value of the collateral underlying the repurchase agreement will be at least equal to the repurchase price, including any accrued interest earned on the repurchase agreement. In the event of a default or bankruptcy by a selling financial institution, the Trust generally will seek to liquidate such collateral. However, the exercise of the Trust's right to liquidate such collateral could involve certain costs or delays and, to the extent that proceeds from any sale upon a default of the obligation to repurchase were less than the repurchase price, the Trust could suffer a loss.

Reverse Repurchase Agreements Risk

Reverse repurchase agreements involve the risks that the interest income earned on the investment of the proceeds will be less than the interest expense of the Trust, that the market value of the securities sold by the Trust may decline below the price at which the Trust is obligated to repurchase the securities and that the securities may not be returned to the Trust. There is no assurance that reverse repurchase agreements can be successfully employed.

Dollar Roll Transactions Risk

Dollar roll transactions involve the risk that the market value of the securities the Trust is required to purchase may decline below the agreed upon repurchase price of those securities. If the broker/dealer to which the Trust sells securities becomes insolvent, the Trust's right to purchase or repurchase securities may be restricted. Successful use of dollar rolls may depend upon the Advisor's ability to predict correctly interest rates and prepayments. There is no assurance that dollar rolls can be successfully employed. These transactions may involve leverage.

When-Issued, Forward Commitment and Delayed Delivery Transactions Risk

The Trust may purchase securities on a when-issued basis (including on a forward commitment or "TBA" (to be announced) basis) and may purchase or sell securities for delayed delivery. When-issued and delayed delivery transactions occur when securities are purchased or sold by the Trust with payment and delivery taking place in the future to secure an advantageous yield or price. Securities purchased on a when-issued or delayed

[Table of Contents](#)

delivery basis may expose the Trust to counterparty risk of default as well as the risk that securities may experience fluctuations in value prior to their actual delivery. The Trust will not accrue income with respect to a when-issued or delayed delivery security prior to its stated delivery date. Purchasing securities on a when-issued or delayed delivery basis can involve the additional risk that the price or yield available in the market when the delivery takes place may not be as favorable as that obtained in the transaction itself.

Event Risk

Event risk is the risk that corporate issuers may undergo restructurings, such as mergers, leveraged buyouts, takeovers, or similar events financed by increased debt. As a result of the added debt, the credit quality and market value of a company's securities may decline significantly.

Defensive Investing Risk

For defensive purposes, the Trust may allocate assets into cash or short-term fixed-income securities without limitation. In doing so, the Trust may succeed in avoiding losses but may otherwise fail to achieve its investment objectives. Further, the value of short-term fixed-income securities may be affected by changing interest rates and by changes in credit ratings of the investments. If the Trust holds cash uninvested it will be subject to the credit risk of the depository institution holding the cash.

Structured Investments Risks

The Trust may invest in structured products, including structured notes, ELNs and other types of structured products. Holders of structured products bear the risks of the underlying investments, index or reference obligation and are subject to counterparty risk.

The Trust may have the right to receive payments only from the structured product and generally does not have direct rights against the issuer or the entity that sold the assets to be securitized. While certain structured products enable the investor to acquire interests in a pool of securities without the brokerage and other expenses associated with directly holding the same securities, investors in structured products generally pay their share of the structured product's administrative and other expenses.

Although it is difficult to predict whether the prices of indices and securities underlying structured products will rise or fall, these prices (and, therefore, the prices of structured products) will be influenced by the same types of political and economic events that affect issuers of securities and capital markets generally. If the issuer of a structured product uses shorter term financing to purchase longer term securities, the issuer may be forced to sell its securities at below market prices if it experiences difficulty in obtaining such financing, which may adversely affect the value of the structured products owned by the Trust.

Structured Notes Risk. Investments in structured notes involve risks, including credit risk and market risk. Where the Trust's investments in structured notes are based upon the movement of one or more factors, including currency exchange rates, interest rates, referenced bonds and stock indices, depending on the factor used and the use of multipliers or deflators, changes in interest rates and movement of the factor may cause significant price fluctuations. Additionally, changes in the reference instrument or security may cause the interest rate on the structured note to be reduced to zero and any further changes in the reference instrument may then reduce the principal amount payable on maturity. Structured notes may be less liquid than other types of securities and more volatile than the reference instrument or security underlying the note.

Equity-Linked Notes Risk. ELNs are hybrid securities with characteristics of both fixed-income and equity securities. An ELN is a debt instrument, usually a bond, that pays interest based upon the performance of an underlying equity, which can be a single stock, basket of stocks or an equity index. The interest payment on an ELN may in some cases be leveraged so that, in percentage terms, it exceeds the relative performance of the

[Table of Contents](#)

market. ELNs generally are subject to the risks associated with the securities of equity issuers, default risk and counterparty risk. Additionally, because the Trust may use ELNs as an alternative or complement to its options strategy, the use of ELNs in this manner would expose the Trust to the risk that such ELNs will not perform as anticipated, and the risk that the use of ELNs will expose the Trust to different or additional default and counterparty risk as compared to a similar investment executed in an options strategy.

Credit-Linked Notes Risk. A CLN is a derivative instrument. It is a synthetic obligation between two or more parties where the payment of principal and/or interest is based on the performance of some obligation (a reference obligation). In addition to the credit risk of the reference obligations and interest rate risk, the buyer/seller of the CLN is subject to counterparty risk.

Event-Linked Securities Risk. Event-linked securities are a form of derivative issued by insurance companies and insurance-related special purpose vehicles that apply securitization techniques to catastrophic property and casualty damages. Unlike other insurable low-severity, high-probability events, the insurance risk of which can be diversified by writing large numbers of similar policies, the holders of a typical event-linked securities are exposed to the risks from high-severity, low-probability events such as that posed by major earthquakes or hurricanes. If a catastrophe occurs that “triggers” the event-linked security, investors in such security may lose some or all of the capital invested. In the case of an event, the funds are paid to the bond sponsor—an insurer, reinsurer or corporation—to cover losses. In return, the bond sponsors pay interest to investors for this catastrophe protection. Event-linked securities can be structured to pay-off on three types of variables—insurance-industry catastrophe loss indices, insured-specific catastrophe losses and parametric indices based on the physical characteristics of catastrophic events. Such variables are difficult to predict or model, and the risk and potential return profiles of event-linked securities may be difficult to assess. Catastrophe-related event-linked securities have been in use since the 1990s, and the securitization and risk-transfer aspects of such event-linked securities are beginning to be employed in other insurance and risk-related areas. No active trading market may exist for certain event-linked securities, which may impair the ability of the Trust to realize full value in the event of the need to liquidate such assets.

Strategic Transactions and Derivatives Risk

The Trust may engage in various Strategic Transactions for duration management and other risk management purposes, including to attempt to protect against possible changes in the market value of the Trust’s portfolio resulting from trends in the securities markets and changes in interest rates or to protect the Trust’s unrealized gains in the value of its portfolio securities, to facilitate the sale of portfolio securities for investment purposes or to establish a position in the securities markets as a temporary substitute for purchasing particular securities or to enhance income or gain. Derivatives are financial contracts or instruments whose value depends on, or is derived from, the value of an underlying asset, reference rate or index (or relationship between two indices). The Trust also may use derivatives to add leverage to the portfolio and/or to hedge against increases in the Trust’s costs associated with any leverage strategy that it may employ. The use of Strategic Transactions to enhance current income may be particularly speculative.

Strategic Transactions involve risks. The risks associated with Strategic Transactions include (i) the imperfect correlation between the value of such instruments and the underlying assets, (ii) the possible default of the counterparty to the transaction, (iii) illiquidity of the derivative instruments, and (iv) high volatility losses caused by unanticipated market movements, which are potentially unlimited. Although both OTC and exchange-traded derivatives markets may experience a lack of liquidity, OTC non-standardized derivative transactions are generally less liquid than exchange-traded instruments. The illiquidity of the derivatives markets may be due to various factors, including congestion, disorderly markets, limitations on deliverable supplies, the participation of speculators, government regulation and intervention, and technical and operational or system failures. In addition, daily limits on price fluctuations and speculative position limits on exchanges on which the Trust may conduct its transactions in derivative instruments may prevent prompt liquidation of positions, subjecting the Trust to the potential of greater losses. Furthermore, the Trust’s ability to successfully use Strategic Transactions

Table of Contents

depends on the Advisor's ability to predict pertinent securities prices, interest rates, currency exchange rates and other economic factors, which cannot be assured. The use of Strategic Transactions may result in losses greater than if they had not been used, may require the Trust to sell or purchase portfolio securities at inopportune times or for prices other than current market values, may limit the amount of appreciation the Trust can realize on an investment or may cause the Trust to hold a security that it might otherwise sell. Additionally, segregated or earmarked liquid assets, amounts paid by the Trust as premiums and cash or other assets held in margin accounts with respect to Strategic Transactions are not otherwise available to the Trust for investment purposes. Please see the Trust's SAI for a more detailed description of Strategic Transactions and the various derivative instruments the Trust may use and the various risks associated with them.

Many OTC derivatives are valued on the basis of dealers' pricing of these instruments. However, the price at which dealers value a particular derivative and the price that the same dealers would actually be willing to pay for such derivative should the Trust wish or be forced to sell such position may be materially different. Such differences can result in an overstatement of the Trust's NAV and may materially adversely affect the Trust in situations in which the Trust is required to sell derivative instruments. Exchange-traded derivatives and OTC derivative transactions submitted for clearing through a central counterparty have become subject to minimum initial and variation margin requirements set by the relevant clearinghouse, as well as possible margin requirements mandated by the SEC or the CFTC. The CFTC and federal banking regulators also have imposed margin requirements on non-cleared OTC derivatives, and the SEC has proposed (but not yet finalized) such non-cleared margin requirements. As applicable, margin requirements will increase the overall costs for the Trust.

While hedging can reduce or eliminate losses, it can also reduce or eliminate gains. Hedges are sometimes subject to imperfect matching between the derivative and the underlying security, and there can be no assurance that the Trust's hedging transactions will be effective.

Derivatives may give rise to a form of leverage and may expose the Trust to greater risk and increase its costs. Recent legislation calls for new regulation of the derivatives markets. The extent and impact of the regulation is not yet known and may not be known for some time. New regulation may make derivatives more costly, may limit the availability of derivatives, or may otherwise adversely affect the value or performance of derivatives.

Counterparty Risk

The Trust will be subject to credit risk with respect to the counterparties to the derivative contracts purchased by the Trust. Because derivative transactions in which the Trust may engage may involve instruments that are not traded on an exchange or cleared through a central counterparty but are instead traded between counterparties based on contractual relationships, the Trust is subject to the risk that a counterparty will not perform its obligations under the related contracts. If a counterparty becomes bankrupt or otherwise fails to perform its obligations due to financial difficulties, the Trust may experience significant delays in obtaining any recovery in bankruptcy or other reorganization proceedings. The Trust may obtain only a limited recovery, or may obtain no recovery, in such circumstances. Although the Trust intends to enter into transactions only with counterparties that the Advisor believes to be creditworthy, there can be no assurance that, as a result, a counterparty will not default and that the Trust will not sustain a loss on a transaction. In the event of the counterparty's bankruptcy or insolvency, the Trust's collateral may be subject to the conflicting claims of the counterparty's creditors, and the Trust may be exposed to the risk of a court treating the Trust as a general unsecured creditor of the counterparty, rather than as the owner of the collateral.

The counterparty risk for cleared derivatives is generally lower than for uncleared OTC derivative transactions since generally a clearing organization becomes substituted for each counterparty to a cleared derivative contract and, in effect, guarantees the parties' performance under the contract as each party to a trade looks only to the clearing organization for performance of financial obligations under the derivative contract. However, there can be no assurance that a clearing organization, or its members, will satisfy its obligations to the

Table of Contents

Trust, or that the Trust would be able to recover the full amount of assets deposited on its behalf with the clearing organization in the event of the default by the clearing organization or the Trust's clearing broker. In addition, cleared derivative transactions benefit from daily marking-to-market and settlement, and segregation and minimum capital requirements applicable to intermediaries. Uncleared OTC derivative transactions generally do not benefit from such protections. This exposes the Trust to the risk that a counterparty will not settle a transaction in accordance with its terms and conditions because of a dispute over the terms of the contract (whether or not bona fide) or because of a credit or liquidity problem, thus causing the Trust to suffer a loss. Such "counterparty risk" is accentuated for contracts with longer maturities where events may intervene to prevent settlement, or where the Trust has concentrated its transactions with a single or small group of counterparties.

In addition, the Trust is subject to the risk that issuers of the instruments in which it invests and trades may default on their obligations under those instruments, and that certain events may occur that have an immediate and significant adverse effect on the value of those instruments. There can be no assurance that an issuer of an instrument in which the Trust invests will not default, or that an event that has an immediate and significant adverse effect on the value of an instrument will not occur, and that the Trust will not sustain a loss on a transaction as a result.

Swaps Risk

Swaps are a type of derivative. Swap agreements involve the risk that the party with which the Trust has entered into the swap will default on its obligation to pay the Trust and the risk that the Trust will not be able to meet its obligations to pay the other party to the agreement. In order to seek to hedge the value of the Trust's portfolio, to hedge against increases in the Trust's cost associated with interest payments on any outstanding borrowings or to seek to increase the Trust's return, the Trust may enter into swaps, including interest rate swap, total return swap (sometimes referred to as a "contract for difference") and/or credit default swap transactions. In interest rate swap transactions, there is a risk that yields will move in the direction opposite of the direction anticipated by the Trust, which would cause the Trust to make payments to its counterparty in the transaction that could adversely affect Trust performance. In addition to the risks applicable to swaps generally (including counterparty risk, high volatility, illiquidity risk and credit risk), credit default swap transactions involve special risks because they are difficult to value, are highly susceptible to liquidity and credit risk, and generally pay a return to the party that has paid the premium only in the event of an actual default by the issuer of the underlying obligation (as opposed to a credit downgrade or other indication of financial difficulty).

Historically, swap transactions have been individually negotiated non-standardized transactions entered into in OTC markets and have not been subject to the same type of government regulation as exchange-traded instruments. However, since the global financial crisis, the OTC derivatives markets have become subject to comprehensive statutes and regulations. In particular, in the United States, the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010 (the "Dodd-Frank Act"), signed into law by President Obama on July 21, 2010, requires that certain derivatives with U.S. persons must be executed on a regulated market and a substantial portion of OTC derivatives must be submitted for clearing to regulated clearinghouses. As a result, swap transactions entered into by the Trust may become subject to various requirements applicable to swaps under the Dodd-Frank Act, including clearing, exchange-execution, reporting and recordkeeping requirements, which may make it more difficult and costly for the Trust to enter into swap transactions and may also render certain strategies in which the Trust might otherwise engage impossible or so costly that they will no longer be economical to implement. Furthermore, the number of counterparties that may be willing to enter into swap transactions with the Trust may also be limited if the swap transactions with the Trust are subject to the swap regulation under the Dodd-Frank Act.

Credit default and total return swap agreements may effectively add leverage to the Trust's portfolio because, in addition to its Managed Assets, the Trust would be subject to investment exposure on the notional amount of the swap. Total return swap agreements are subject to the risk that a counterparty will default on its

[Table of Contents](#)

payment obligations to the Trust thereunder. The Trust is not required to enter into swap transactions for hedging purposes or to enhance income or gain and may choose not to do so. In addition, the swaps market is subject to a changing regulatory environment. It is possible that regulatory or other developments in the swaps market could adversely affect the Trust's ability to successfully use swaps.

Securities Lending Risk

The Trust may lend securities to financial institutions. Securities lending involves exposure to certain risks, including operational risk (i.e., the risk of losses resulting from problems in the settlement and accounting process), "gap" risk (i.e., the risk of a mismatch between the return on cash collateral reinvestments and the fees the Trust has agreed to pay a borrower), and credit, legal, counterparty and market risk. If a securities lending counterparty were to default, the Trust would be subject to the risk of a possible delay in receiving collateral or in recovering the loaned securities, or to a possible loss of rights in the collateral. In the event a borrower does not return the Trust's securities as agreed, the Trust may experience losses if the proceeds received from liquidating the collateral do not at least equal the value of the loaned security at the time the collateral is liquidated, plus the transaction costs incurred in purchasing replacement securities. This event could trigger adverse tax consequences for the Trust. The Trust could lose money if its short-term investment of the collateral declines in value over the period of the loan. Substitute payments for dividends received by the Trust for securities loaned out by the Trust will generally not be considered qualified dividend income. The securities lending agent will take the tax effects on shareholders of this difference into account in connection with the Trust's securities lending program. Substitute payments received on tax-exempt securities loaned out will generally not be tax-exempt income.

Short Sales Risk

Short-selling involves selling securities which may or may not be owned and borrowing the same securities for delivery to the purchaser, with an obligation to replace the borrowed securities at a later date. If the price of the security sold short increases between the time of the short sale and the time the Trust replaces the borrowed security, the Trust will incur a loss; conversely, if the price declines, the Trust will realize a capital gain. Any gain will be decreased, and any loss will be increased, by the transaction costs incurred by the Trust, including the costs associated with providing collateral to the broker-dealer (usually cash and liquid securities) and the maintenance of collateral with its custodian. Although the Trust's gain is limited to the price at which it sold the security short, its potential loss is theoretically unlimited.

Short-selling necessarily involves certain additional risks. However, if the short seller does not own the securities sold short (an uncovered short sale), the borrowed securities must be replaced by securities purchased at market prices in order to close out the short position, and any appreciation in the price of the borrowed securities would result in a loss. Uncovered short sales expose the Trust to the risk of uncapped losses until a position can be closed out due to the lack of an upper limit on the price to which a security may rise. Purchasing securities to close out the short position can itself cause the price of the securities to rise further, thereby exacerbating the loss. There is the risk that the securities borrowed by the Trust in connection with a short-sale must be returned to the securities lender on short notice. If a request for return of borrowed securities occurs at a time when other short-sellers of the security are receiving similar requests, a "short squeeze" can occur, and the Trust may be compelled to replace borrowed securities previously sold short with purchases on the open market at the most disadvantageous time, possibly at prices significantly in excess of the proceeds received at the time the securities were originally sold short.

Inflation Risk

Inflation risk is the risk that the value of assets or income from investment will be worth less in the future, as inflation decreases the value of money. As inflation increases, the real value of the common shares and

[Table of Contents](#)

distributions on those shares can decline. In addition, during any periods of rising inflation, interest rates on any borrowings by the Trust would likely increase, which would tend to further reduce returns to the holders of common shares.

Deflation Risk

Deflation risk is the risk that prices throughout the economy decline over time, which may have an adverse effect on the market valuation of companies, their assets and their revenues. In addition, deflation may have an adverse effect on the creditworthiness of issuers and may make issuer default more likely, which may result in a decline in the value of the Trust's portfolio.

Risk Associated with Recent Market Events

The global financial crisis that began in 2008 caused a significant decline in the value and liquidity of many securities and unprecedented volatility in the markets. Periods of market volatility remain, and may continue to occur in the future, in response to various political, social and economic events both within and outside of the United States. These conditions have resulted in, and in many cases continue to result in, greater price volatility, less liquidity, widening credit spreads and a lack of price transparency, with many securities remaining illiquid and of uncertain value. Such market conditions may adversely affect the Trust, including by making valuation of some of the Trust's securities uncertain and/or result in sudden and significant valuation increases or declines in the Trust's holdings. If there is a significant decline in the value of the Trust's portfolio, this may impact the asset coverage levels for any outstanding leverage the Trust may have.

Risks resulting from any future debt or other economic crisis could also have a detrimental impact on the global economic recovery, the financial condition of financial institutions and the Trust's business, financial condition and results of operation. Market and economic disruptions have affected, and may in the future affect, consumer confidence levels and spending, personal bankruptcy rates, levels of incurrence and default on consumer debt and home prices, among other factors. To the extent uncertainty regarding the U.S. or global economy negatively impacts consumer confidence and consumer credit factors, the Trust's business, financial condition and results of operations could be significantly and adversely affected. Downgrades to the credit ratings of major banks could result in increased borrowing costs for such banks and negatively affect the broader economy. Moreover, Federal Reserve policy, including with respect to certain interest rates, may also adversely affect the value, volatility and liquidity of dividend- and interest-paying securities. Market volatility, rising interest rates and/or unfavorable economic conditions could impair the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives.

EMU and Redenomination Risk

As the European debt crisis progressed, the possibility of one or more Eurozone countries exiting the EMU, or even the collapse of the Euro as a common currency, arose, creating significant volatility at times in currency and financial markets generally. The effects of the collapse of the Euro, or of the exit of one or more countries from the EMU, on the U.S. and global economy and securities markets are impossible to predict and any such events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Trust's portfolio. Any partial or complete dissolution of the EMU could have significant adverse effects on currency and financial markets, and on the values of the Trust's portfolio investments. If one or more EMU countries were to stop using the Euro as its primary currency, the Trust's investments in such countries may be redenominated into a different or newly adopted currency. As a result, the value of those investments could decline significantly and unpredictably. In addition, securities or other investments that are redenominated may be subject to foreign currency risk, illiquidity risk and valuation risk to a greater extent than similar investments currently denominated in Euros. To the extent a currency used for redenomination purposes is not specified in respect of certain EMU-related investments, or should the Euro cease to be used entirely, the currency in which such investments are denominated may be unclear, making such investments particularly difficult to value or dispose of. The Trust may incur additional expenses to the extent it is required to seek judicial or other clarification of the denomination or value of such securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Market Disruption and Geopolitical Risk

The occurrence of events similar to those in recent years, such as the aftermath of the war in Iraq, instability in Afghanistan, Pakistan, Egypt, Libya, Syria, Russia, Ukraine and the Middle East, ongoing epidemics of infectious diseases in certain parts of the world, terrorist attacks in the United States and around the world, social and political discord, debt crises (such as the Greek crisis), sovereign debt downgrades, increasingly strained relations between the United States and a number of foreign countries, including traditional allies, such as certain European countries, and historical adversaries, such as North Korea, Iran, China and Russia, and the international community generally, new and continued political unrest in various countries, such as Venezuela and Spain, the exit or potential exit of one or more countries from the EU or the EMU, continued changes in the balance of political power among and within the branches of the U.S. government, among others, may result in market volatility, may have long term effects on the U.S. and worldwide financial markets, and may cause further economic uncertainties in the United States and worldwide.

The current political climate has intensified concerns about a potential trade war between China and the United States, as each country has recently imposed tariffs on the other country's products. These actions may trigger a significant reduction in international trade, the oversupply of certain manufactured goods, substantial price reductions of goods and possible failure of individual companies and/or large segments of China's export industry, which could have a negative impact on the Trust's performance. U.S. companies that source material and goods from China and those that make large amounts of sales in China would be particularly vulnerable to an escalation of trade tensions. Uncertainty regarding the outcome of the trade tensions and the potential for a trade war could cause the U.S. dollar to decline against safe haven currencies, such as the Japanese yen and the euro. Events such as these and their consequences are difficult to predict and it is unclear whether further tariffs may be imposed or other escalating actions may be taken in the future.

The decision made in Brexit to leave the EU has led to volatility in the financial markets of the United Kingdom and more broadly across Europe and may also lead to weakening in consumer, corporate and financial confidence in such markets. The formal notification to the European Council required under Article 50 of the Treaty on EU was made on March 29, 2017, triggering a two year period during which the terms of exit are to be negotiated. Pursuant to an agreement between the United Kingdom and the EU, the date of Brexit has been extended to October 31, 2019. The longer term economic, legal, political and social framework to be put in place between the United Kingdom and the EU are unclear at this stage and are likely to lead to ongoing political and economic uncertainty and periods of exacerbated volatility in both the United Kingdom and in wider European markets for some time. In particular, the decision made in Brexit may lead to a call for similar referendums in other European jurisdictions which may cause increased economic volatility in the European and global markets. This mid- to long-term uncertainty may have an adverse effect on the economy generally and on the ability of the Trust to execute its strategies and to receive attractive returns. In particular, currency volatility may mean that the returns of the Trust and its investments are adversely affected by market movements and may make it more difficult, or more expensive, for the Trust to execute prudent currency hedging policies. Potential decline in the value of the British Pound and/or the Euro against other currencies, along with the potential downgrading of the United Kingdom's sovereign credit rating, may also have an impact on the performance of portfolio companies or investments located in the United Kingdom or Europe. In light of the above, no definitive assessment can currently be made regarding the impact that Brexit will have on the Trust, its investments or its organization more generally.

The occurrence of any of these above events could have a significant adverse impact on the value and risk profile of the Trust's portfolio. The Trust does not know how long the securities markets may be affected by similar events and cannot predict the effects of similar events in the future on the U.S. economy and securities markets. There can be no assurance that similar events and other market disruptions will not have other material and adverse implications.

Regulation and Government Intervention Risk

The global financial crisis led the U.S. Government and the Federal Reserve, as well as certain foreign governments, to take a number of unprecedented actions designed to support certain financial institutions and

Table of Contents

segments of the financial markets that experienced extreme volatility. The withdrawal of Federal Reserve or other U.S. or non-U.S. governmental support could negatively affect financial markets generally and reduce the value and liquidity of certain securities. Additionally, with continued economic recovery and the cessation of certain market support activities, the Trust may face a heightened level of interest rate risk as a result of a rise or increased volatility in interest rates.

Federal, state, and other governments, their regulatory agencies or self-regulatory organizations may take actions that affect the regulation of the issuers in which the Trust invests. Legislation or regulation may also change the way in which the Trust is regulated. Such legislation or regulation could limit or preclude the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives.

In the aftermath of the global financial crisis, there appears to be a renewed popular, political and judicial focus on finance related consumer protection. Financial institution practices are also subject to greater scrutiny and criticism generally. In the case of transactions between financial institutions and the general public, there may be a greater tendency toward strict interpretation of terms and legal rights in favor of the consuming public, particularly where there is a real or perceived disparity in risk allocation and/or where consumers are perceived as not having had an opportunity to exercise informed consent to the transaction. In the event of conflicting interests between retail investors holding common shares of a closed-end investment company such as the Trust and a large financial institution, a court may similarly seek to strictly interpret terms and legal rights in favor of retail investors.

The Trust may be affected by governmental action in ways that are not foreseeable, and there is a possibility that such actions could have a significant adverse effect on the Trust and its ability to achieve its investment objectives.

Regulation as a "Commodity Pool"

The CFTC subjects advisers to registered investment companies to regulation by the CFTC if a fund that is advised by the investment adviser either (i) invests, directly or indirectly, more than a prescribed level of its liquidation value in CFTC-regulated futures, options and swaps ("CFTC Derivatives"), or (ii) markets itself as providing investment exposure to such instruments. To the extent the Trust uses CFTC Derivatives, it intends to do so below such prescribed levels and will not market itself as a "commodity pool" or a vehicle for trading such instruments. Accordingly, the Advisor has claimed an exclusion from the definition of the term "commodity pool operator" under the Commodity Exchange Act ("CEA") pursuant to Rule 4.5 under the CEA. The Advisor is not, therefore, subject to registration or regulation as a "commodity pool operator" under the CEA in respect of the Trust.

Failures of Futures Commission Merchants and Clearing Organizations Risk

The Trust is required to deposit funds to margin open positions in cleared derivative instruments (both futures and swaps) with a clearing broker registered as a "futures commission merchant" ("FCM"). The CEA requires an FCM to segregate all funds received from customers with respect to any orders for the purchase or sale of U.S. domestic futures contracts and cleared swaps from the FCM's proprietary assets. Similarly, the CEA requires each FCM to hold in a separate secure account all funds received from customers with respect to any orders for the purchase or sale of foreign futures contracts and segregate any such funds from the funds received with respect to domestic futures contracts. However, all funds and other property received by an FCM from its customers are held by an FCM on a commingled basis in an omnibus account and amounts in excess of assets posted to the clearing organization may be invested by an FCM in certain instruments permitted under the applicable regulation. There is a risk that assets deposited by the Trust with any FCM as margin for futures contracts or commodity options may, in certain circumstances, be used to satisfy losses of other clients of the Trust's FCM. In addition, the assets of the Trust posted as margin against both swaps and futures contracts may not be fully protected in the event of the FCM's bankruptcy.

Legal, Tax and Regulatory Risks

Legal, tax and regulatory changes could occur that may have material adverse effects on the Trust. For example, the regulatory and tax environment for derivative instruments in which the Trust may participate is evolving, and such changes in the regulation or taxation of derivative instruments may have material adverse

[Table of Contents](#)

effects on the value of derivative instruments held by the Trust and the ability of the Trust to pursue its investment strategies.

To qualify for the favorable U.S. federal income tax treatment generally accorded to RICs, the Trust must, among other things, derive in each taxable year at least 90% of its gross income from certain prescribed sources and distribute for each taxable year at least 90% of its “investment company taxable income” (generally, ordinary income plus the excess, if any, of net short-term capital gain over net long-term capital loss). If for any taxable year the Trust does not qualify as a RIC, all of its taxable income for that year (including its net capital gain) would be subject to tax at regular corporate rates without any deduction for distributions to shareholders, and such distributions would be taxable as ordinary dividends to the extent of the Trust’s current and accumulated earnings and profits.

The current presidential administration has called for, and in certain instances has begun to implement, significant changes to U.S. fiscal, tax, trade, healthcare, immigration, foreign, and government regulatory policy. In this regard, there is significant uncertainty with respect to legislation, regulation and government policy at the federal level, as well as the state and local levels. Recent events have created a climate of heightened uncertainty and introduced new and difficult-to-quantify macroeconomic and political risks with potentially far-reaching implications. There has been a corresponding meaningful increase in the uncertainty surrounding interest rates, inflation, foreign exchange rates, trade volumes and fiscal and monetary policy. To the extent the U.S. Congress or the current presidential administration implements changes to U.S. policy, those changes may impact, among other things, the U.S. and global economy, international trade and relations, unemployment, immigration, corporate taxes, healthcare, the U.S. regulatory environment, inflation and other areas. Some particular areas identified as subject to potential change, amendment or repeal include the Dodd-Frank Act, including the Volcker Rule and various swaps and derivatives regulations, credit risk retention requirements and the authorities of the Federal Reserve, the Financial Stability Oversight Council and the SEC. Although the Trust cannot predict the impact, if any, of these changes to the Trust’s business, they could adversely affect the Trust’s business, financial condition, operating results and cash flows. Until the Trust knows what policy changes are made and how those changes impact the Trust’s business and the business of the Trust’s competitors over the long term, the Trust will not know if, overall, the Trust will benefit from them or be negatively affected by them.

The risks and uncertainties associated with these policy proposals are heightened by the recent U.S. federal election, which has resulted in different political parties controlling the U.S. House of Representatives, on the one hand, and the U.S. Senate and the Executive Branch, on the other hand. Additional risks arising from the differences in expressed policy preferences among the various constituencies in these branches of the U.S. government has led in the past, and may lead in the future, to short term or prolonged policy impasses, which could, and has, resulted in shutdowns of the U.S. federal government. U.S. federal government shutdowns, especially prolonged shutdowns, could have a significant adverse impact on the economy in general and could impair the ability of issuers to raise capital in the securities markets. Any of these effects could have an adverse impact on companies in the Trust’s portfolio and consequently on the value of their securities and the Trust’s NAV.

The rules dealing with U.S. federal income taxation are constantly under review by persons involved in the legislative process and by the IRS and the U.S. Treasury Department. The recently enacted Tax Act makes substantial changes to the Code. Among those changes are a significant permanent reduction in the generally applicable corporate tax rate, changes in the taxation of individuals and other non-corporate taxpayers that generally but not universally reduce their taxes on a temporary basis subject to “sunset” provisions, the elimination or modification of various previously allowed deductions (including substantial limitations on the deductibility of interest and, in the case of individuals, the deduction for personal state and local taxes), certain additional limitations on the deduction of net operating losses, certain preferential rates of taxation on certain dividends and certain business income derived by non-corporate taxpayers in comparison to other ordinary income recognized by such taxpayers, and significant changes to the international tax rules. The effect of these, and the many other, changes made in the Tax Act is highly uncertain, both in terms of their direct effect on the taxation of an investment in our common shares and their indirect effect on the value of our assets or our common shares or market conditions generally. Furthermore, many of the provisions of the Tax Act will require guidance through the issuance of Treasury regulations in order to assess their effect. There may be a substantial

Table of Contents

delay before such regulations are promulgated, increasing the uncertainty as to the ultimate effect of the statutory amendments on the Trust. There also may be technical corrections legislation proposed with respect to the Tax Act, the effect of which cannot be predicted and may be adverse to the Trust or its shareholders.

Investment Company Act Regulations

The Trust is a registered closed-end management investment company and as such is subject to regulations under the Investment Company Act. Generally speaking, any contract or provision thereof that is made, or where performance involves a violation of the Investment Company Act or any rule or regulation thereunder is unenforceable by either party unless a court finds otherwise.

Legislation Risk

At any time after the date of this prospectus, legislation may be enacted that could negatively affect the assets of the Trust. Legislation or regulation may change the way in which the Trust itself is regulated. The Advisor cannot predict the effects of any new governmental regulation that may be implemented and there can be no assurance that any new governmental regulation will not adversely affect the Trust's ability to achieve its investment objectives.

Potential Conflicts of Interest of the Advisor and Others

The investment activities of BlackRock, the ultimate parent company of the Advisor, and its Affiliates and their directors, officers and employees and of The PNC Financial Services Group, Inc. (which, through a subsidiary, has a significant economic interest in BlackRock) and its subsidiaries (each with The PNC Financial Services Group, Inc., an "Entity" and collectively, the "Entities") in the management of, or their interest in, their own accounts and other accounts they manage, may present conflicts of interest that could disadvantage the Trust and its shareholders. BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities provide investment management services to other funds and discretionary managed accounts that may follow investment programs similar to that of the Trust. Subject to the requirements of the Investment Company Act, BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities intend to engage in such activities and may receive compensation from third parties for their services. None of BlackRock, its Affiliates or the Entities are under any obligation to share any investment opportunity, idea or strategy with the Trust. As a result, BlackRock, its Affiliates and the Entities may compete with the Trust for appropriate investment opportunities. The results of the Trust's investment activities, therefore, may differ from those of an Affiliate, and Entity or another account managed by an Affiliate or an Entity and it is possible that the Trust could sustain losses during periods in which one or more Affiliates, Entities and other accounts achieve profits on their trading for proprietary or other accounts. BlackRock has adopted policies and procedures designed to address potential conflicts of interests. For additional information about potential conflicts of interest and the way in which BlackRock addresses such conflicts, please see "Conflicts of Interest" and "Management of the Trust—Portfolio Management—Potential Material Conflicts of Interest" in the SAI.

Decision-Making Authority Risk

Investors have no authority to make decisions or to exercise business discretion on behalf of the Trust, except as set forth in the Trust's governing documents. The authority for all such decisions is generally delegated to the Board, which in turn, has delegated the day-to-day management of the Trust's investment activities to the Advisor, subject to oversight by the Board.

Management Risk

The Trust is subject to management risk because it is an actively managed investment portfolio. The Advisor and the individual portfolio managers will apply investment techniques and risk analyses in making investment decisions for the Trust, but there can be no guarantee that these will produce the desired results. The Trust may be subject to a relatively high level of management risk because the Trust may invest in derivative instruments, which may be highly specialized instruments that require investment techniques and risk analyses different from those associated with equities and bonds.

Table of Contents

Market and Selection Risk

Market risk is the possibility that the market values of securities owned by the Trust will decline. There is a risk that equity and/or bond markets will go down in value, including the possibility that such markets will go down sharply and unpredictably.

Stock markets are volatile, and the price of equity securities fluctuates based on changes in a company's financial condition and overall market and economic conditions. An adverse event, such as an unfavorable earnings report, may depress the value of a particular common stock held by the Trust. Also, the price of common stocks is sensitive to general movements in the stock market and a drop in the stock market may depress the price of common stocks to which the Trust has exposure. Common stock prices fluctuate for several reasons, including changes in investors' perceptions of the financial condition of an issuer or the general condition of the relevant stock market, or when political or economic events affecting the issuers occur.

The prices of fixed-income securities tend to fall as interest rates rise, and such declines tend to be greater among fixed-income securities with longer maturities. Market risk is often greater among certain types of fixed-income securities, such as zero coupon bonds that do not make regular interest payments but are instead bought at a discount to their face values and paid in full upon maturity. As interest rates change, these securities often fluctuate more in price than securities that make regular interest payments and therefore subject the Trust to greater market risk than a fund that does not own these types of securities.

When-issued and delayed delivery transactions are subject to changes in market conditions from the time of the commitment until settlement, which may adversely affect the prices or yields of the securities being purchased. The greater the Trust's outstanding commitments for these securities, the greater the Trust's exposure to market price fluctuations.

Selection risk is the risk that the securities that the Trust's management selects will underperform the equity and/or bond market, the market relevant indices or other funds with similar investment objectives and investment strategies.

Reliance on the Advisor Risk

The Trust is dependent upon services and resources provided by the Advisor, and therefore the Advisor's parent, BlackRock. The Advisor is not required to devote its full time to the business of the Trust and there is no guarantee or requirement that any investment professional or other employee of the Advisor will allocate a substantial portion of his or her time to the Trust. The loss of one or more individuals involved with the Advisor could have a material adverse effect on the performance or the continued operation of the Trust. For additional information on the Advisor and BlackRock, see "Management of the Trust—Investment Advisor."

Reliance on Service Providers Risk

The Trust must rely upon the performance of service providers to perform certain functions, which may include functions that are integral to the Trust's operations and financial performance. Failure by any service provider to carry out its obligations to the Trust in accordance with the terms of its appointment, to exercise due care and skill or to perform its obligations to the Trust at all as a result of insolvency, bankruptcy or other causes could have a material adverse effect on the Trust's performance and returns to shareholders. The termination of the Trust's relationship with any service provider, or any delay in appointing a replacement for such service provider, could materially disrupt the business of the Trust and could have a material adverse effect on the Trust's performance and returns to shareholders.

Information Technology Systems Risk

The Trust is dependent on the Advisor for certain management services as well as back-office functions. The Advisor depends on information technology systems in order to assess investment opportunities,

Table of Contents

strategies and markets and to monitor and control risks for the Trust. It is possible that a failure of some kind which causes disruptions to these information technology systems could materially limit the Advisor's ability to adequately assess and adjust investments, formulate strategies and provide adequate risk control. Any such information technology-related difficulty could harm the performance of the Trust. Further, failure of the back-office functions of the Advisor to process trades in a timely fashion could prejudice the investment performance of the Trust.

Cyber Security Risk

With the increased use of technologies such as the Internet to conduct business, the Trust is susceptible to operational, information security and related risks. In general, cyber incidents can result from deliberate attacks or unintentional events. Cyber-attacks include, but are not limited to, gaining unauthorized access to digital systems (e.g., through "hacking" or malicious software coding) for purposes of misappropriating assets or sensitive information, corrupting data, or causing operational disruption. Cyber-attacks may also be carried out in a manner that does not require gaining unauthorized access, such as causing denial-of-service attacks on websites (i.e., efforts to make network services unavailable to intended users). Cyber security failures by or breaches of the Advisor and other service providers (including, but not limited to, fund accountants, custodians, transfer agents and administrators), and the issuers of securities in which the Trust invests, have the ability to cause disruptions and impact business operations, potentially resulting in financial losses, interference with the Trust's ability to calculate its NAV, impediments to trading, the inability of shareholders to transact business, violations of applicable privacy and other laws, regulatory fines, penalties, reputational damage, reimbursement or other compensation costs, or additional compliance costs. In addition, substantial costs may be incurred in order to prevent any cyber incidents in the future. While the Trust has established business continuity plans in the event of, and risk management systems to prevent, such cyber-attacks, there are inherent limitations in such plans and systems including the possibility that certain risks have not been identified. Furthermore, the Trust cannot control the cyber security plans and systems put in place by service providers to the Trust and issuers in which the Trust invests. As a result, the Trust or its shareholders could be negatively impacted.

Misconduct of Employees and of Service Providers Risk

Misconduct or misrepresentations by employees of the Advisor or the Trust's service providers could cause significant losses to the Trust. Employee misconduct may include binding the Trust to transactions that exceed authorized limits or present unacceptable risks and unauthorized trading activities, concealing unsuccessful trading activities (which, in any case, may result in unknown and unmanaged risks or losses) or making misrepresentations regarding any of the foregoing. Losses could also result from actions by the Trust's service providers, including, without limitation, failing to recognize trades and misappropriating assets. In addition, employees and service providers may improperly use or disclose confidential information, which could result in litigation or serious financial harm, including limiting the Trust's business prospects or future marketing activities. Despite the Advisor's due diligence efforts, misconduct and intentional misrepresentations may be undetected or not fully comprehended, thereby potentially undermining the Advisor's due diligence efforts. As a result, no assurances can be given that the due diligence performed by the Advisor will identify or prevent any such misconduct.

Portfolio Turnover Risk

The Trust's annual portfolio turnover rate may vary greatly from year to year, as well as within a given year. Portfolio turnover rate is not considered a limiting factor in the execution of investment decisions for the Trust. A higher portfolio turnover rate results in correspondingly greater brokerage commissions and other transactional expenses that are borne by the Trust. High portfolio turnover may result in an increased realization of net short-term capital gains by the Trust which, when distributed to common shareholders, will be taxable as ordinary income. Additionally, in a declining market, portfolio turnover may create realized capital losses.

[Table of Contents](#)

Anti-Takeover Provisions Risk

The Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Bylaws include provisions that could limit the ability of other entities or persons to acquire control of the Trust or convert the Trust to open-end status or to change the composition of the Board. Such provisions could limit the ability of shareholders to sell their shares at a premium over prevailing market prices by discouraging a third party from seeking to obtain control of the Trust. See "Certain Provisions in the Agreement and Declaration of Trust and Bylaws."

HOW THE TRUST MANAGES RISK

Investment Limitations

The Trust has adopted certain investment limitations designed to limit investment risk. Some of these limitations are fundamental and thus may not be changed without the approval of the holders of a majority of the outstanding common shares. See "Investment Objectives and Policies—Investment Restrictions" in the SAI.

The restrictions and other limitations set forth throughout this prospectus and in the SAI apply only at the time of purchase of securities and will not be considered violated unless an excess or deficiency occurs or exists immediately after and as a result of the acquisition of securities.

Management of Investment Portfolio and Capital Structure to Limit Leverage Risk

The Trust may take certain actions if short-term interest rates increase or market conditions otherwise change (or the Trust anticipates such an increase or change) and any leverage the Trust may have outstanding begins (or is expected) to adversely affect common shareholders. In order to attempt to offset such a negative impact of any outstanding leverage on common shareholders, the Trust may shorten the average maturity of its investment portfolio (by investing in short-term securities) or may reduce any indebtedness that it may have incurred. As explained above under "Risks—Leverage Risk," the success of any such attempt to limit leverage risk depends on the Advisor's ability to accurately predict interest rate or other market changes. Because of the difficulty of making such predictions, the Trust may never attempt to manage its capital structure in the manner described in this paragraph.

If market conditions suggest that employing leverage, or employing additional leverage if the Trust already has outstanding leverage, would be beneficial, the Trust may enter into one or more credit facilities, increase any existing credit facilities, sell preferred shares or engage in additional leverage transactions, subject to the restrictions of the Investment Company Act.

Strategic Transactions

The Trust may use certain Strategic Transactions designed to limit the risk of price fluctuations of securities and to preserve capital. These Strategic Transactions include using swaps, financial futures contracts, options on financial futures or options based on either an index of long-term securities, or on securities whose prices, in the opinion of the Advisor, correlate with the prices of the Trust's investments. There can be no assurance that Strategic Transactions will be used or used effectively to limit risk, and Strategic Transactions may be subject to their own risks.

MANAGEMENT OF THE TRUST

Trustees and Officers

The Board is responsible for the overall management of the Trust, including supervision of the duties performed by the Advisor. There are eleven Trustees. A majority of the Trustees are not "interested persons" (as

Table of Contents

defined in the Investment Company Act) of the Trust (“Independent Trustees”). The name and business address of the Trustees and officers of the Trust and their principal occupations and other affiliations during the past five years are set forth under “Management of the Trust” in the SAI.

Mr. Michael J. Castellano, Dr. R. Glenn Hubbard and Ms. Catherine A. Lynch may be considered “interested persons” (as defined in the Investment Company Act) of the Trust as a result of their ownership of securities of one or more of the Trust’s Underwriters in connection with the Trust’s initial public offering. Mr. Castellano, Dr. Hubbard and Ms. Lynch will cease to be “interested persons” of the Trust once such Underwriters could not be viewed as principal underwriters of the Trust, which is expected to occur upon the completion of the Trust’s initial public offering.

Investment Advisor

The Advisor is responsible for the management of the Trust’s portfolio and provides the necessary personnel, facilities, equipment and certain other services necessary to the operation of the Trust. The Advisor, located at 100 Bellevue Parkway, Wilmington, Delaware 19809, is a wholly-owned subsidiary of BlackRock.

BlackRock is one of the world’s largest publicly-traded investment management firms. As of March 31, 2019, BlackRock’s assets under management were approximately \$6.52 trillion. BlackRock has over 30 years of experience managing closed-end products and, as of March 31, 2019, advised a registered closed-end family of 68 exchange-listed active funds with approximately \$44.8 billion in assets.

BlackRock is independent in ownership and governance, with no single majority shareholder and a majority of independent directors. PNC Financial Services Group, Inc. is BlackRock’s largest shareholder.

Investment Philosophy

The Advisor believes that the knowledge and experience of its Science and Technology Team enable it to evaluate the macro environment and assess its impact on the various sub-sectors within the science and technology sector. Within this framework, the Advisor identifies stocks it believes to have attractive characteristics, evaluates the use of options and provides ongoing portfolio risk management.

The top-down or macro component of the investment process is designed to assess the various interrelated macro variables affecting the science and technology sector as a whole. Risk/reward analysis is a key component of the Advisor’s macro view. The Advisor evaluates science and technology sub-sectors (e.g., internet software and services, systems software, semiconductors, data processing and outsourced services, communications equipment, etc.). Selection of sub-sectors within the science and technology sector is a direct result of the Advisor’s sub-sector analysis. Once the evaluation of the various sub-sectors in the science and technology sector is complete, the Advisor determines what it believes to be optimal portfolio positioning.

Bottom-up security selection is focused on identifying companies the Advisor believes to have the most attractive characteristics within each applicable sub-sector of the science and technology sector. The Advisor seeks to identify companies that it believes to have strong product potential, solid earnings growth and/or earnings power which are under appreciated by investors, a quality management team and compelling relative and absolute valuation. The Advisor believes that the knowledge and experience of its Science and Technology Team enables it to identify attractive science and technology company securities.

The Advisor intends to utilize options strategies that consist of writing (selling) covered call options on a portion of the common stocks held by the Trust, as well as other options strategies such as writing other call and put options or using options to manage risk. The portfolio management team will work together closely to determine which options strategies to pursue to seek to generate current gains from options premiums and to enhance the Trust’s risk-adjusted returns.

[Table of Contents](#)

Portfolio Managers

The members of the portfolio management team who are primarily responsible for the day-to-day management of the Trust's portfolio are as follows:

Tony Kim, Managing Director and portfolio manager, is a member of BlackRock's Fundamental Active Equity division of BlackRock's Active Equities Group. He is lead portfolio manager for the information technology sector, product manager for Global Science & Technology equity portfolios, and a member of the team's Investment Strategy Group. Prior to joining BlackRock in 2013, Mr. Kim was a Senior Research Analyst for Artisan Partners based in San Francisco covering the global technology sector on their International Growth Team, which he joined in 2006. Before assuming this role, Mr. Kim worked as a Research Analyst at Credit Suisse Asset Management where he worked primarily on their U.S. large funds and was a portfolio manager of their Global Internet and Software sector fund from 2005 to mid-2006. Mr. Kim has also worked with E-View, a spin-off of Sarnoff Labs, and at Neuberger Berman covering technology and telecom sectors. Mr. Kim began his investment career on the sell-side covering IT at SG Warburg in 1994, where he then moved to Merrill Lynch to execute M&A transactions for technology companies.

Kyle G. McClements, CFA, Managing Director, is Head of the Equity Derivatives team within BlackRock's Fundamental Equity division. He is a portfolio manager for equity derivatives overlay and hedging assignments, including BlackRock's closed-end funds. Mr. McClements' service with the firm dates back to 2004, including his years with State Street Research & Management (SSRM), which merged with BlackRock in 2005. At SSRM, Mr. McClements was a Vice President and senior derivatives strategist responsible for equity derivative strategy and trading in the Quantitative Equity Group at State Street Research. Prior to joining State Street Research in 2004, Mr. McClements was a senior trader/analyst at Deutsche Asset Management, responsible for derivatives, equity program, technology and energy sector, and foreign exchange trading. Mr. McClements began his career in 1994 as a derivatives analyst with Donaldson Lufkin & Jenrette responsible for pricing and performance analytics for the derivatives trading desk.

Christopher M. Accettella, Director, is a member of the Equity Derivatives team within BlackRock's Fundamental Active Equity division. He is a portfolio manager for equity derivatives overlay and hedging assignments, including BlackRock's equity closed-end funds. Prior to joining BlackRock in 2005, Mr. Accettella was an institutional sales trader with American Technology Research. From 2001 to 2003, he was with Deutsche Asset Management where he was responsible for derivatives and program trading. Prior to that, he was a senior associate in the Pacific Basin Equity Group at Scudder Investments Singapore Limited. Mr. Accettella began his investment career in 1997 as a portfolio analyst in the European Equity group of Scudder Kemper Investments, Inc.

The SAI provides additional information about other accounts managed by the portfolio management team and the ownership of the Trust's securities by each portfolio manager.

Investment Management Agreement

Pursuant to an investment management agreement between the Advisor and the Trust (the "Investment Management Agreement"), the Trust has agreed to pay the Advisor a monthly management fee at an annual rate equal to 1.25% of the average daily value of the Trust's Managed Assets.

"Managed Assets" means the total assets of the Trust, (including any assets attributable to money borrowed for investment purposes) minus the sum of the Trust's accrued liabilities (other than money borrowed for investment purposes). This means that during periods in which the Trust is using leverage, the fee paid to the Advisor will be higher than if the Trust did not use leverage because the fee is calculated as a percentage of the Trust's Managed Assets, which include those assets purchased with leverage.

Table of Contents

A discussion regarding the basis for the approval of the Investment Management Agreement by the Board will be available in the Trust's first report to shareholders.

Except as otherwise described in this prospectus, the Trust pays, in addition to the fees paid to the Advisor, all other costs and expenses of its operations, including compensation of its Trustees (other than those affiliated with the Advisor), custodian, leveraging expenses, transfer and dividend disbursing agent expenses, legal fees, rating agency fees, listing fees and expenses, expenses of independent auditors, expenses of repurchasing shares, expenses of preparing, printing and distributing shareholder reports, notices, proxy statements and reports to governmental agencies and taxes, if any.

The Trust and the Advisor have entered into the Fee Waiver Agreement, pursuant to which the Advisor has contractually agreed to waive the management fee with respect to any portion of the Trust's assets attributable to investments in any equity and fixed-income mutual funds and ETFs managed by the Advisor or its affiliates that have a contractual fee, through June 30, 2020, and may be continued from year to year thereafter, provided that such continuance is specifically approved by the Advisor and the Trust (including by a majority of the Trust's Independent Trustees). Neither the Advisor nor the Trust is obligated to extend the Fee Waiver Agreement. The Fee Waiver Agreement may be terminated at any time, without the payment of any penalty, only by the Trust (upon the vote of a majority of the Independent Trustees or a majority of the outstanding voting securities of the Trust), upon 90 days' written notice by the Trust to the Advisor.

NET ASSET VALUE

The NAV of the Trust's common shares will be computed based upon the value of the Trust's portfolio securities and other assets. NAV per common share will be determined as of the close of the regular trading session on the NYSE on each business day on which the NYSE is open for trading. The Trust calculates NAV per common share by subtracting the Trust's liabilities (including accrued expenses, dividends payable and any borrowings of the Trust), and the liquidation value of any outstanding Trust preferred shares from the Trust's total assets (the value of the securities the Trust holds plus cash or other assets, including interest accrued but not yet received) and dividing the result by the total number of common shares of the Trust outstanding.

Valuation of securities held by the Trust is as follows:

Equity Investments. Equity securities traded on a recognized securities exchange (e.g., NYSE), separate trading boards of a securities exchange or through a market system that provides contemporaneous transaction pricing information (an "Exchange") are valued via independent pricing services generally at the Exchange closing price or if an Exchange closing price is not available, the last traded price on that Exchange prior to the time as of which the assets or liabilities are valued; however, under certain circumstances other means of determining current market value may be used. If an equity security is traded on more than one Exchange, the current market value of the security where it is primarily traded generally will be used. In the event that there are no sales involving an equity security held by the Trust on a day on which the Trust values such security, the last bid (long positions) or ask (short positions) price, if available, will be used as the value of such security. If the Trust holds both long and short positions in the same security, the last bid price will be applied to securities held long and the last ask price will be applied to securities sold short. If no bid or ask price is available on a day on which the Trust values such security, the prior day's price will be used, unless the Advisor determines that such prior day's price no longer reflects the fair value of the security, in which case such asset would be treated as a fair value asset.

Fixed-Income Investments. Fixed-income securities for which market quotations are readily available are generally valued using such securities' current market value. The Trust values fixed-income portfolio securities and non-exchange traded derivatives using the last available bid prices or current market quotations provided by dealers or prices (including evaluated prices) supplied by the Trust's approved independent third-party pricing

Table of Contents

services, each in accordance with valuation procedures approved by the Board. The pricing services may use matrix pricing or valuation models that utilize certain inputs and assumptions to derive values, including transaction data (e.g., recent representative bids and offers), credit quality information, perceived market movements, news, and other relevant information and by other methods, which may include consideration of: yields or prices of securities of comparable quality, coupon, maturity and type; indications as to values from dealers; general market conditions; and other factors and assumptions. Pricing services generally value fixed-income securities assuming orderly transactions of an institutional round lot size, but the Trust may hold or transact in such securities in smaller, odd lot sizes. Odd lots often trade at lower prices than institutional round lots. The amortized cost method of valuation may be used with respect to debt obligations with sixty days or less remaining to maturity unless the Advisor determines such method does not represent fair value. Loan participation notes are generally valued at the mean of the last available bid prices from one or more brokers or dealers as obtained from independent third-party pricing services. Certain fixed-income investments including asset-backed and mortgage related securities may be valued based on valuation models that consider the estimated cash flows of each tranche of the entity, establish a benchmark yield and develop an estimated tranche specific spread to the benchmark yield based on the unique attributes of the tranche.

Options, Futures, Swaps and Other Derivatives. Exchange-traded equity options for which market quotations are readily available are valued at the mean of the last bid and ask prices as quoted on the Exchange or the board of trade on which such options are traded. In the event that there is no mean price available for an exchange traded equity option held by the Trust on a day on which the Trust values such option, the last bid (long positions) or ask (short positions) price, if available, will be used as the value of such option. If no bid or ask price is available on a day on which the Trust values such option, the prior day's price will be used, unless the Advisor determines that such prior day's price no longer reflects the fair value of the option in which case such option will be treated as a fair value asset. OTC derivatives may be valued using a mathematical model which may incorporate a number of market data factors. Financial futures contracts and options thereon, which are traded on exchanges, are valued at their last sale price or settle price as of the close of such exchanges. Swap agreements and other derivatives are generally valued daily based upon quotations from market makers or by a pricing service in accordance with the valuation procedures approved by the Board.

Underlying Funds. Shares of underlying open-end funds are valued at NAV. Shares of underlying exchange-traded closed-end funds or other exchange-traded funds will be valued at their most recent closing price.

General Valuation Information. In determining the market value of portfolio investments, the Trust may employ independent third party pricing services, which may use, without limitation, a matrix or formula method that takes into consideration market indexes, matrices, yield curves and other specific adjustments. This may result in the securities being valued at a price different from the price that would have been determined had the matrix or formula method not been used. All cash, receivables and current payables are carried on the Trust's books at their face value. The price the Trust could receive upon the sale of any particular portfolio investment may differ from the Trust's valuation of the investment, particularly for securities that trade in thin or volatile markets or that are valued using a fair valuation methodology or a price provided by an independent pricing service. As a result, the price received upon the sale of an investment may be less than the value ascribed by the Trust, and the Trust could realize a greater than expected loss or lesser than expected gain upon the sale of the investment. The Trust's ability to value its investment may also be impacted by technological issues and/or errors by pricing services or other third party service providers.

Prices obtained from independent third party pricing services, broker-dealers or market makers to value the Trust's securities and other assets and liabilities are based on information available at the time the Trust values its assets and liabilities. In the event that a pricing service quotation is revised or updated subsequent to the day on which the Trust valued such security, the revised pricing service quotation generally will be applied prospectively. Such determination shall be made considering pertinent facts and circumstances surrounding such revision.

Table of Contents

In the event that application of the methods of valuation discussed above result in a price for a security which is deemed not to be representative of the fair market value of such security, the security will be valued by, under the direction of or in accordance with a method specified by the Board as reflecting fair value. All other assets and liabilities (including securities for which market quotations are not readily available) held by the Trust (including restricted securities) are valued at fair value as determined in good faith by the Board or by the Advisor (its delegate). Any assets and liabilities which are denominated in a foreign currency are translated into U.S. dollars at the prevailing rates of exchange.

Certain of the securities acquired by the Trust may be traded on foreign exchanges or OTC markets on days on which the Trust's NAV is not calculated and common shares are not traded. In such cases, the NAV of the Trust's common shares may be significantly affected on days when investors can neither purchase nor sell shares of the Trust.

Fair Value. When market quotations are not readily available or are believed by the Advisor to be unreliable, the Trust's investments are valued at fair value ("Fair Value Assets"). Fair Value Assets are valued by the Advisor in accordance with procedures approved by the Board. The Advisor may conclude that a market quotation is not readily available or is unreliable if a security or other asset or liability does not have a price source due to its complete lack of trading, if the Advisor believes a market quotation from a broker-dealer or other source is unreliable (e.g., where it varies significantly from a recent trade, or no longer reflects the fair value of the security or other asset or liability subsequent to the most recent market quotation), where the security or other asset or liability is only thinly traded or due to the occurrence of a significant event subsequent to the most recent market quotation. For this purpose, a "significant event" is deemed to occur if the Advisor determines, in its business judgment prior to or at the time of pricing the Trust's assets or liabilities, that it is likely that the event will cause a material change to the last exchange closing price or closing market price of one or more assets or liabilities held by the Trust. On any date the NYSE is open and the primary exchange on which a foreign asset or liability is traded is closed, such asset or liability will be valued using the prior day's price, provided that the Advisor is not aware of any significant event or other information that would cause such price to no longer reflect the fair value of the asset or liability, in which case such asset or liability would be treated as a Fair Value Asset. For certain foreign securities, a third-party vendor supplies evaluated, systematic fair value pricing based upon the movement of a proprietary multi-factor model after the relevant foreign markets have closed. This systematic fair value pricing methodology is designed to correlate the prices of foreign securities following the close of the local markets to the price that might have prevailed as of the Trust's pricing time.

The Advisor, with input from the BlackRock Portfolio Management Group, will submit its recommendations regarding the valuation and/or valuation methodologies for Fair Value Assets to BlackRock's Valuation Committee. The BlackRock Valuation Committee may accept, modify or reject any recommendations. In addition, the Trust's accounting agent periodically endeavors to confirm the prices it receives from all third party pricing services, index providers and broker-dealers, and, with the assistance of the Advisor, to regularly evaluate the values assigned to the securities and other assets and liabilities of the Trust. The pricing of all Fair Value Assets is subsequently reported to the Board or a Committee thereof.

When determining the price for a Fair Value Asset, the BlackRock Valuation Committee shall seek to determine the price that the Trust might reasonably expect to receive from the current sale of that asset or liability in an arm's-length transaction. The price generally may not be determined based on what the Trust might reasonably expect to receive for selling an asset or liability at a later time or if it holds the asset or liability to maturity. Fair value determinations shall be based upon all available factors that the BlackRock Valuation Committee deems relevant at the time of the determination, and may be based on analytical values determined by the Advisor using proprietary or third party valuation models.

Fair value represents a good faith approximation of the value of an asset or liability. The fair value of one or more assets or liabilities may not, in retrospect, be the price at which those assets or liabilities could have been sold during the period in which the particular fair values were used in determining the Trust's NAV. As a result,

[Table of Contents](#)

the Trust's sale or repurchase of its shares at NAV, at a time when a holding or holdings are valued at fair value, may have the effect of diluting or increasing the economic interest of existing shareholders.

The Trust's annual audited financial statements, which are prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("US GAAP"), follow the requirements for valuation set forth in Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification Topic 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures" ("ASC 820"), which defines and establishes a framework for measuring fair value under US GAAP and expands financial statement disclosure requirements relating to fair value measurements.

Generally, ASC 820 and other accounting rules applicable to investment companies and various assets in which they invest are evolving. Such changes may adversely affect the Trust. For example, the evolution of rules governing the determination of the fair market value of assets or liabilities to the extent such rules become more stringent would tend to increase the cost and/or reduce the availability of third-party determinations of fair market value.

DISTRIBUTIONS

Commencing with the Trust's initial distribution, the Trust intends to make regular monthly cash distributions of all or a portion of its net investment income, including current gains, to common shareholders. We expect to declare the initial monthly dividend on the Trust's common shares within approximately 45 days after completion of this offering and to pay that initial monthly dividend approximately 60 to 90 days after completion of this offering, depending on market conditions. The Trust will pay common shareholders at least annually all or substantially all of its investment company taxable income. The Investment Company Act generally limits the Trust to one capital gain distribution per year, subject to certain exceptions, including as discussed below in connection with the Level Distribution Plan.

The Trust has, pursuant to an SEC exemptive order granted to certain of BlackRock's closed-end funds, adopted a plan to support a level distribution of income, capital gains and/or return of capital. The Level Distribution Plan has been approved by the Board and is consistent with the Trust's investment objectives and policies. Under the Level Distribution Plan, the Trust will distribute all available investment income, including current gains, to its shareholders, consistent with its investment objectives and as required by the Code. If sufficient investment income, including current gains, is not available on a monthly basis, the Trust will distribute long-term capital gains and/or return of capital to shareholders in order to maintain a level distribution. A return of capital distribution may involve a return of the shareholder's original investment. Though not currently taxable, such a distribution may lower a shareholder's basis in the Trust, thus potentially subjecting the shareholder to future tax consequences in connection with the sale of Trust shares, even if sold at a loss to the shareholder's original investment. All or a significant portion of the Trust's distributions to shareholders during the Trust's first year of operations may consist of return of capital. Each monthly distribution to shareholders is expected to be at a fixed amount established by the Board, except for extraordinary distributions and potential distribution rate increases or decreases to enable the Trust to comply with the distribution requirements imposed by the Code. Shareholders should not draw any conclusions about the Trust's investment performance from the amount of these distributions or from the terms of the Level Distribution Plan. The Trust's total return performance on NAV will be presented in its financial highlights table, which will be available in the Trust's shareholder reports, every six-months. The Board may amend, suspend or terminate the Level Distribution Plan without prior notice if it deems such actions to be in the best interests of the Trust or its shareholders. The suspension or termination of the Level Distribution Plan could have the effect of creating a trading discount (if the Trust's stock is trading at or above NAV) or widening an existing trading discount. The Trust is subject to risks that could have an adverse impact on its ability to maintain level distributions. Examples of potential risks include, but are not limited to, economic downturns impacting the markets, decreased market volatility,

[Table of Contents](#)

companies suspending or decreasing corporate dividend distributions and changes in the Code. Please see “Risks” for a more complete description of the Trust’s risks.

The tax treatment and characterization of the Trust’s distributions may vary significantly from time to time because of the varied nature of the Trust’s investments. The ultimate tax characterization of the Trust’s distributions made in a fiscal year cannot finally be determined until after the end of that fiscal year. As a result, there is a possibility that the Trust may make total distributions during a fiscal year in an amount that exceeds the Trust’s earnings and profits for U.S. federal income tax purposes. In such situations, the amount by which the Trust’s total distributions exceed earnings and profits would generally be treated as a return of capital reducing the amount of a shareholder’s tax basis in such shareholder’s shares, with any amounts exceeding such basis treated as gain from the sale of shares.

Various factors will affect the level of the Trust’s income, including the asset mix and the Trust’s use of hedging. To permit the Trust to maintain a more stable monthly distribution, the Trust may from time to time distribute less than the entire amount of income earned in a particular period. The undistributed income would be available to supplement future distributions. As a result, the distributions paid by the Trust for any particular monthly period may be more or less than the amount of income actually earned by the Trust during that period. Undistributed income will add to the Trust’s NAV and, correspondingly, distributions from undistributed income will deduct from the Trust’s NAV. The Trust intends to distribute any long-term capital gains not distributed under the Level Distribution Plan annually.

Under normal market conditions, the Advisor will seek to manage the Trust in a manner such that the Trust’s distributions are reflective of the Trust’s current and projected earnings levels. The distribution level of the Trust is subject to change based upon a number of factors, including the current and projected level of the Trust’s earnings, and may fluctuate over time.

The Trust reserves the right to change its distribution policy and the basis for establishing the rate of its monthly distributions at any time and may do so without prior notice to common shareholders.

Shareholders will automatically have all dividends and distributions reinvested in common shares of the Trust issued by the Trust or purchased in the open market in accordance with the Trust’s dividend reinvestment plan unless an election is made to receive cash. See “Dividend Reinvestment Plan.”

DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLAN

Unless the registered owner of common shares elects to receive cash by contacting Computershare Trust Company, N.A. (the “Reinvestment Plan Agent”), all dividends or other distributions (together, a “dividend”) declared for your common shares of the Trust will be automatically reinvested by the Reinvestment Plan Agent, as agent for shareholders in administering the Trust’s dividend reinvestment plan (the “Reinvestment Plan”), in additional common shares of the Trust. Shareholders who elect not to participate in the Reinvestment Plan will receive all dividends in cash paid by check mailed directly to the shareholder of record (or, if the common shares are held in street or other nominee name, then to such nominee) by the Reinvestment Plan Agent. You may elect not to participate in the Reinvestment Plan and to receive all dividends in cash by contacting the Reinvestment Plan Agent at the address set forth below. Participation in the Reinvestment Plan is completely voluntary and may be terminated or resumed at any time without penalty by telephonic, internet or written notice if received and processed by the Reinvestment Plan Agent prior to the dividend record date. Additionally, the Reinvestment Plan Agent seeks to process notices received after the record date but prior to the payable date and such notices often will become effective by the payable date. Where late notices are not processed by the applicable payable date, such termination or resumption will be effective with respect to any subsequently declared dividend.

Table of Contents

Some brokers may automatically elect to receive cash on your behalf and may re-invest that cash in additional common shares of the Trust for you. If you wish for all dividends declared on your common shares of the Trust to be automatically reinvested pursuant to the Reinvestment Plan, please contact your broker.

The Reinvestment Plan Agent will open an account for each common shareholder under the Reinvestment Plan in the same name in which such common shareholder's common shares are registered. Whenever the Trust declares a dividend payable in cash, non-participants in the Reinvestment Plan will receive cash and participants in the Reinvestment Plan will receive the equivalent in common shares. The common shares will be acquired by the Reinvestment Plan Agent for the participants' accounts, depending upon the circumstances described below, either (i) through receipt of additional unissued but authorized common shares from the Trust ("newly issued common shares") or (ii) by purchase of outstanding common shares on the open market ("open-market purchases"). If, on the dividend payment date, the NAV is equal to or less than the market price per share plus estimated per share fees (such condition often referred to as a "market premium"), the Reinvestment Plan Agent will invest the dividend amount in newly issued common shares on behalf of the participants. The number of newly issued common shares to be credited to each participant's account will be determined by dividing the dollar amount of the dividend by the NAV on the dividend payment date. However, if the NAV is less than 95% of the market price on the dividend payment date, the dollar amount of the dividend will be divided by 95% of the market price on the dividend payment date. If, on the dividend payment date, the NAV is greater than the market price per share plus estimated per share fees (such condition often referred to as a "market discount"), the Reinvestment Plan Agent will invest the dividend amount in common shares acquired on behalf of the participants in open-market purchases. In the event of a market discount on the dividend payment date, the Reinvestment Plan Agent will have until the last business day before the next date on which the common shares trade on an "ex-dividend" basis or 30 days after the dividend payment date, whichever is sooner, to invest the dividend amount in common shares acquired in open-market purchases. It is contemplated that the Trust will pay monthly income dividends. If, before the Reinvestment Plan Agent has completed its open-market purchases, the market price per common share exceeds the NAV per common share, the average per common share purchase price paid by the Reinvestment Plan Agent may exceed the NAV of the common shares, resulting in the acquisition of fewer common shares than if the dividend had been paid in newly issued common shares on the dividend payment date. Because of the foregoing difficulty with respect to open-market purchases, the Reinvestment Plan provides that if the Reinvestment Plan Agent is unable to invest the full dividend amount in open-market purchases, or if the market discount shifts to a market premium during the purchase period, the Reinvestment Plan Agent may cease making open-market purchases and may invest any uninvested portion in newly issued shares. Investments in newly issued shares made in this manner would be made pursuant to the same process described above and the date of issue for such newly issued shares will substitute for the dividend payment date.

The Reinvestment Plan Agent maintains all shareholders' accounts in the Reinvestment Plan and furnishes written confirmation of all transactions in the accounts, including information needed by shareholders for tax records. Common shares in the account of each Reinvestment Plan participant will be held by the Reinvestment Plan Agent on behalf of the Reinvestment Plan participant, and each shareholder proxy will include those shares purchased or received pursuant to the Reinvestment Plan.

In the case of shareholders such as banks, brokers or nominees, which hold shares for others who are the beneficial owners, the Reinvestment Plan Agent will administer the Reinvestment Plan on the basis of the number of common shares certified from time to time by the record shareholder's name and held for the account of beneficial owners who participate in the Reinvestment Plan.

The Reinvestment Plan Agent's fees for the handling of the reinvestment of dividends will be paid by the Trust. However, each participant will pay a \$0.02 per share fee incurred in connection with open-market purchases, which will be deducted from the value of the dividend. The automatic reinvestment of dividends will not relieve participants of any U.S. federal, state or local income tax that may be payable (or required to be withheld) on such dividends. See "Tax Matters."

Table of Contents

Participants that request a sale of shares through the Reinvestment Plan Agent are subject to a \$2.50 sales fee and a \$0.15 per share fee. Per share fees include any applicable brokerage commissions the Reinvestment Plan Agent is required to pay.

The Trust reserves the right to amend or terminate the Reinvestment Plan. There is no direct service charge to participants with regard to purchases in the Reinvestment Plan; however, the Trust reserves the right to amend the Reinvestment Plan to include a service charge payable by the participants. Notice of amendments to the Reinvestment Plan will be sent to participants.

All correspondence concerning the Reinvestment Plan should be directed to the Reinvestment Plan Agent, through the internet at <http://www.computershare.com/blackrock>, or in writing to Computershare, P.O. Box 505000, Louisville, KY 40233-5000, Telephone: [\(800\) 699-1236](tel:8006991236). Overnight correspondence should be directed to the Reinvestment Plan Agent at Computershare, 462 South 4th Street, Suite 1600, Louisville, KY 40202.

DESCRIPTION OF SHARES

Common Shares

The Trust is a statutory trust organized under the laws of Delaware pursuant to a Certificate of Trust, dated as of February 20, 2019, and the Agreement and Declaration of Trust. The Trust is authorized to issue an unlimited number of common shares of beneficial interest, par value \$0.001 per share. Each common share has one vote and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the terms of this offering, will be fully paid and, under the Delaware Statutory Trust Act, the purchasers of the common shares will have no obligation to make further payments for the purchase of the common shares or contributions to the Trust solely by reason of their ownership of the common shares, except that the Trustees shall have the power to cause shareholders to pay certain expenses of the Trust by setting off charges due from shareholders from declared but unpaid dividends or distributions owed the shareholders and/or by reducing the number of common shares owned by each respective shareholder. If and whenever preferred shares are outstanding, the holders of common shares will not be entitled to receive any distributions from the Trust unless all accrued dividends on preferred shares have been paid, unless asset coverage (as defined in the Investment Company Act) with respect to preferred shares would be at least 200% after giving effect to the distributions and unless certain other requirements imposed by any rating agencies rating the preferred shares have been met. See “Description of Shares—Preferred Shares” in the SAI. All common shares are equal as to dividends, assets and voting privileges and have no conversion, preemptive or other subscription rights. The Trust will send annual and semi-annual reports, including financial statements, to all holders of its shares.

The Trust has no present intention of offering any additional shares, including preferred shares. Any additional offerings of shares, including preferred shares, will require approval by the Board. Any additional offering of common shares will be subject to the requirements of the Investment Company Act, which provides that shares may not be issued at a price below the then current NAV, exclusive of sales load, except in connection with an offering to existing holders of common shares or with the consent of a majority of the Trust’s outstanding voting securities.

The Trust’s common shares have been approved for listing on the NYSE, subject to notice of issuance, under the symbol “BSTZ.”

The Advisor has agreed to pay all of the Trust’s organizational expenses and all offering costs associated with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor.

Table of Contents

Unlike open-end funds, closed-end funds like the Trust do not continuously offer shares and do not provide daily redemptions. Rather, if a shareholder determines to buy additional common shares or sell shares already held, the shareholder may do so by trading through a broker on the NYSE or otherwise. Shares of closed-end investment companies frequently trade on an exchange at prices lower than NAV. Shares of closed-end investment companies like the Trust have during some periods traded at prices higher than NAV and during other periods have traded at prices lower than NAV. Because the market value of the common shares may be influenced by such factors as dividend levels (which are in turn affected by expenses), call protection on its portfolio securities, dividend stability, portfolio credit quality, the Trust's NAV, relative demand for and supply of such shares in the market, general market and economic conditions and other factors beyond the control of the Trust, the Trust cannot assure you that common shares will trade at a price equal to or higher than NAV in the future. The common shares are designed primarily for long-term investors and you should not purchase the common shares if you intend to sell them soon after purchase. See "Repurchase of Common Shares" below and "Repurchase of Common Shares" in the SAI.

Preferred Shares

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust provides that the Board may authorize and issue preferred shares, with rights as determined by the Board, by action of the Board without the approval of the holders of the common shares. Holders of common shares have no preemptive right to purchase any preferred shares that might be issued. The Trust does not currently intend to issue preferred shares.

Under the Investment Company Act, the Trust is not permitted to issue preferred shares unless immediately after such issuance the value of the Trust's total assets is at least 200% of the liquidation value of the outstanding preferred shares (i.e., the liquidation value may not exceed 50% of the Trust's total assets). In addition, the Trust is not permitted to declare any cash dividend or other distribution on its common shares unless, at the time of such declaration, the value of the Trust's total assets is at least 200% of such liquidation value. If the Trust issues preferred shares, it may be subject to restrictions imposed by the guidelines of one or more rating agencies that may issue ratings for preferred shares issued by the Trust. These guidelines may impose asset coverage or portfolio composition requirements that are more stringent than those imposed on the Trust by the Investment Company Act. It is not anticipated that these covenants or guidelines would impede the Advisor from managing the Trust's portfolio in accordance with the Trust's investment objectives and policies. Please see "Description of Shares" in the SAI for more information.

CERTAIN PROVISIONS IN THE AGREEMENT AND DECLARATION OF TRUST AND BYLAWS

The Agreement and Declaration of Trust includes provisions that could have the effect of limiting the ability of other entities or persons to acquire control of the Trust or to change the composition of the Board. This could have the effect of depriving shareholders of an opportunity to sell their shares at a premium over prevailing market prices by discouraging a third party from seeking to obtain control over the Trust. Such attempts could have the effect of increasing the expenses of the Trust and disrupting the normal operation of the Trust. The Board is divided into three classes. At each annual meeting of shareholders the term of only one class of Trustees expires and only the Trustees in that one class stand for re-election. Trustees standing for election at an annual meeting of shareholders are elected to a three-year term. This provision could delay for up to two years the replacement of a majority of the Board. A Trustee may be removed from office for cause only, and only by the action of a majority of the remaining Trustees followed by a vote of the holders of at least 75% of the shares then entitled to vote for the election of the respective Trustee.

In addition, the Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust requires the favorable vote of a majority of the Board followed by the favorable vote of the holders of at least 75% of the outstanding shares of each affected class or series of the Trust, voting separately as a class or series, to approve, adopt or authorize certain transactions with 5% or greater holders of a class or series of shares and their associates, unless the transaction

Table of Contents

has been approved by at least 80% of the Trustees, in which case “a majority of the outstanding voting securities” (as defined in the Investment Company Act) of the Trust shall be required. These voting requirements are in addition to any regulatory relief required from the SEC with respect to such transaction. For purposes of these provisions, a 5% or greater holder of a class or series of shares (a “Principal Shareholder”) refers to any person who, whether directly or indirectly and whether alone or together with its affiliates and associates, beneficially owns 5% or more of the outstanding shares of all outstanding classes or series of shares of beneficial interest of the Trust. The 5% holder transactions subject to these special approval requirements are:

- the merger or consolidation of the Trust or any subsidiary of the Trust with or into any Principal Shareholder;
- the issuance of any securities of the Trust to any Principal Shareholder for cash (other than pursuant to any automatic dividend reinvestment plan);
- the sale, lease or exchange of all or any substantial part of the assets of the Trust to any Principal Shareholder, except assets having an aggregate fair market value of less than 2% of the total assets of the Trust, aggregating for the purpose of such computation all assets sold, leased or exchanged in any series of similar transactions within a twelve-month period; or
- the sale, lease or exchange to the Trust or any subsidiary of the Trust, in exchange for securities of the Trust, of any assets of any Principal Shareholder, except assets having an aggregate fair market value of less than 2% of the total assets of the Trust, aggregating for purposes of such computation all assets sold, leased or exchanged in any series of similar transactions within a twelve-month period.

To convert the Trust to an open-end investment company, the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust requires the favorable vote of a majority of the Board followed by the favorable vote of the holders of at least 75% of the outstanding shares of each affected class or series of shares of the Trust, voting separately as a class or series, unless such conversion has been approved by at least 80% of the Trustees, in which case “a majority of the outstanding voting securities” (as defined in the Investment Company Act) of the Trust shall be required. The foregoing vote would satisfy a separate requirement in the Investment Company Act that any conversion of the Trust to an open-end investment company be approved by the shareholders. If approved in the foregoing manner, we anticipate conversion of the Trust to an open-end investment company might not occur until 90 days after the shareholders’ meeting at which such conversion was approved and would also require at least 10 days’ prior notice to all shareholders. Conversion of the Trust to an open-end investment company would require the redemption of any outstanding preferred shares, which could eliminate or alter the leveraged capital structure of the Trust with respect to the common shares. Following any such conversion, it is also possible that certain of the Trust’s investment policies and strategies would have to be modified to assure sufficient portfolio liquidity, including in order to comply with Rule 22e-4 under the Investment Company Act. In the event of conversion, the common shares would cease to be listed on the NYSE or other national securities exchanges or market systems. Shareholders of an open-end investment company may require the company to redeem their shares at any time, except in certain circumstances as authorized by or under the Investment Company Act, at their NAV, less such redemption charge, if any, as might be in effect at the time of a redemption. The Trust expects to pay all such redemption requests in cash, but reserves the right to pay redemption requests in a combination of cash or securities. If such partial payment in securities were made, investors may incur brokerage costs in converting such securities to cash. If the Trust were converted to an open-end fund, it is likely that new shares would be sold at NAV plus a sales load. The Board believes, however, that the closed-end structure is desirable in light of the Trust’s investment objectives and policies. Therefore, you should assume that it is not likely that the Board would vote to convert the Trust to an open-end fund.

For the purposes of calculating “a majority of the outstanding voting securities” under the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust, each class and series of the Trust shall vote together as a single class, except to the extent required by the Investment Company Act or the Trust’s Agreement and Declaration of Trust with respect to any class or series of shares. If a separate vote is required, the applicable proportion of shares of the class or series, voting as a separate class or series, also will be required.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Board has determined that provisions with respect to the Board and the shareholder voting requirements described above, which voting requirements are greater than the minimum requirements under Delaware law or the Investment Company Act, are in the best interests of shareholders generally. Reference should be made to the Agreement and Declaration of Trust on file with the SEC for the full text of these provisions.

The Trust's Bylaws generally require that advance notice be given to the Trust in the event a shareholder desires to nominate a person for election to the Board or to transact any other business at an annual meeting of shareholders. Notice of any such nomination or business must be delivered to or received at the principal executive offices of the Trust not less than 120 calendar days nor more than 150 calendar days prior to the anniversary date of the prior year's annual meeting (subject to certain exceptions). Any notice by a shareholder must be accompanied by certain information as provided in the Bylaws. Reference should be made to the Bylaws on file with the SEC for the full text of these provisions.

LIMITED TERM AND ELIGIBLE TENDER OFFER

In accordance with the Trust's Agreement and Declaration of Trust, the Trust intends to dissolve as of the Dissolution Date; provided that the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, without shareholder approval, extend the Dissolution Date: (i) once for up to one year, and (ii) once for up to an additional six months, to a date up to and including eighteen months after the initial Dissolution Date (which date shall then become the Dissolution Date). In determining whether to extend the Dissolution Date, the Board may consider the inability to sell the Trust's assets in a time frame consistent with dissolution due to lack of market liquidity or other extenuating circumstances. Additionally, the Board may determine that market conditions are such that it is reasonable to believe that, with an extension, the Trust's remaining assets will appreciate and generate capital appreciation and income in an amount that, in the aggregate, is meaningful relative to the cost and expense of continuing the operation of the Trust. Each holder of common shares would be paid a pro rata portion of the Trust's net assets upon dissolution of the Trust.

Beginning with the Wind-Down Period, the Trust may begin liquidating all or a portion of the Trust's portfolio, and may deviate from its investment policies and may not achieve its investment objectives. During the Wind-Down Period (or in anticipation of an Eligible Tender Offer), the Trust's portfolio composition may change as more of its portfolio holdings are called or sold and portfolio holdings are disposed of in anticipation of liquidation.

As of a date within twelve months preceding the Dissolution Date, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, cause the Trust to conduct an Eligible Tender Offer. The Board has established that the Trust must have aggregate net assets at least equal to the Dissolution Threshold immediately following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer to ensure the continued viability of the Trust. In an Eligible Tender Offer, the Trust will offer to purchase all common shares held by each common shareholder; provided that if the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets below the Dissolution Threshold, the Eligible Tender Offer will be canceled and no common shares will be repurchased pursuant to the Eligible Tender Offer. Instead, the Trust will begin (or continue) liquidating its portfolio and proceed to dissolve on or about the Dissolution Date. Regardless of whether the Eligible Tender Offer is completed or canceled, the Advisor will pay all costs and expenses associated with the making of an Eligible Tender Offer, other than brokerage and related transaction costs associated with the disposition of portfolio investments in connection with the Eligible Tender Offer, which will be borne by the Trust and its common shareholders. The Eligible Tender Offer would be made, and common shareholders would be notified thereof, in accordance with the requirements of the Investment Company Act, the Exchange Act and the applicable tender offer rules thereunder (including Rule 13e-4 and Regulation 14E under the Exchange Act). If the payment for properly tendered common shares would result in the Trust having aggregate net assets greater than or equal to the Dissolution Threshold, all common shares properly tendered and not withdrawn will be purchased by the Trust pursuant to the terms of the Eligible Tender Offer. The Trust's purchase of tendered common shares pursuant to a tender

[Table of Contents](#)

offer will have tax consequences for tendering common shareholders and may have tax consequences for non-tendering common shareholders. In addition, the Trust would continue to be subject to its obligations with respect to its issued and outstanding borrowings, preferred stock or debt securities, if any. An Eligible Tender Offer may be commenced upon approval of the Board, without a shareholder vote. The Trust is not required to conduct an Eligible Tender Offer. If no Eligible Tender Offer is conducted, the Trust will dissolve on the Dissolution Date (subject to extension as described above), unless the limited term provisions of the Agreement and Declaration of Trust are amended with the vote of shareholders.

Following the completion of an Eligible Tender Offer, the Board may, by a Board Action Vote, eliminate the Dissolution Date without shareholder approval and provide for the Trust's perpetual existence. In determining whether to eliminate the Dissolution Date, the Board may consider market conditions at such time and all other factors deemed relevant by the Board in consultation with the Advisor, taking into account that the Advisor may have a potential conflict of interest in recommending to the Board that the limited term structure be eliminated and the Trust have a perpetual existence. In making a decision to eliminate the Dissolution Date to provide for the Trust's perpetual existence, the Board will take such actions with respect to the continued operations of the Trust as it deems to be in the best interests of the Trust. The Trust is not required to conduct additional tender offers following an Eligible Tender Offer and conversion to a perpetual structure. Therefore, remaining common shareholders may not have another opportunity to participate in a tender offer or exchange their common shares for the then-existing NAV per share. There is no guarantee that the Board will eliminate the Dissolution Date following completion of an Eligible Tender Offer so that the Trust will have a perpetual existence.

All common shareholders remaining after a tender offer will be subject to proportionately higher expenses due to the reduction in the Trust's assets resulting from payment for the tendered common shares. A reduction in assets, and the corresponding increase in the Trust's expense ratio, could result in lower returns and put the Trust at a disadvantage relative to its peers and potentially cause the Trust's common shares to trade at a wider discount to NAV than it otherwise would. Such reduction in the Trust's assets may also result in less investment flexibility, reduced diversification and greater volatility for the Trust, and may have an adverse effect on the Trust's investment performance. Moreover, the resulting reduction in the number of outstanding common shares could cause the common shares to become more thinly traded or otherwise adversely impact the secondary market trading of such common shares.

The Board may, to the extent it deems appropriate and without shareholder approval, adopt a plan of liquidation at any time preceding the anticipated Dissolution Date, which plan of liquidation may set forth the terms and conditions for implementing the termination of the Trust's existence, including the commencement of the winding down of its investment operations and the making of one or more liquidating distributions to common shareholders prior to the Dissolution Date.

Upon its dissolution, the Trust will distribute substantially all of its net assets to shareholders, after paying or otherwise providing for all charges, taxes, expenses and liabilities, whether due or accrued or anticipated, of the Trust, as may be determined by the Board. The Trust retains broad flexibility to liquidate its portfolio, wind up its business and make liquidating distributions to common shareholders in a manner and on a schedule it believes will best contribute to the achievement of its investment objectives. Accordingly, as the Trust nears an Eligible Tender Offer or the Dissolution Date, the Advisor may begin liquidating all or a portion of the Trust's portfolio through opportunistic sales. During this time, the Trust may not achieve its investment objectives, comply with the investment guidelines described in this prospectus or be able to sustain its historical distribution levels. During such period(s), the Trust's portfolio composition may change as more of its portfolio holdings are called or sold and portfolio holdings are disposed of in anticipation of dissolution or an Eligible Tender Offer. Rather than reinvesting the proceeds of matured, called or sold securities in accordance with the investment program described above, the Trust may invest such proceeds in short term or other lower yielding securities or hold the proceeds in cash, which may adversely affect its performance. The Trust's distributions during the Wind-Down Period may decrease, and such distributions may include a return of capital. The Trust may

[Table of Contents](#)

distribute the proceeds in one or more liquidating distributions prior to the final dissolution, which may cause fixed expenses to increase when expressed as a percentage of assets under management. It is expected that shareholders will receive cash in any liquidating distribution from the Trust, regardless of their participation in the Trust's dividend reinvestment plan. Shareholders generally will realize capital gain or loss upon the dissolution of the Trust in an amount equal to the difference between the amount of cash or other property received by the shareholder (including any property deemed received by reason of its being placed in a liquidating trust) and the shareholder's adjusted tax basis in the shares of the Trust for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, the Trust will complete the liquidation of its portfolio (to the extent possible and not already liquidated), retire or redeem its leverage facilities, if any (to the extent not already retired or redeemed), distribute all of its liquidated net assets to its common shareholders (to the extent not already distributed) and terminate its existence under Delaware law.

Although it is anticipated that the Trust will have distributed substantially all of its net assets to shareholders as soon as practicable after the Dissolution Date, securities for which no market exists or securities trading at depressed prices, if any, may be placed in a liquidating trust. Securities placed in a liquidating trust may be held for an indefinite period of time, potentially several years or longer, until they can be sold or pay out all of their cash flows. During such time, the shareholders will continue to be exposed to the risks associated with the Trust and the value of their interest in the liquidating trust will fluctuate with the value of the liquidating trust's remaining assets. To the extent the costs associated with a liquidating trust exceed the value of the remaining securities, the liquidating trust trustees may determine to dispose of the remaining securities in a manner of their choosing. The Trust cannot predict the amount, if any, of securities that will be required to be placed in a liquidating trust or how long it will take to sell or otherwise dispose of such securities.

The Trust is not a so called “target date” or “life cycle” fund whose asset allocation becomes more conservative over time as its target date, often associated with retirement, approaches. In addition, the Trust is not a “target term” fund whose investment objective is to return its original NAV on the Dissolution Date or in an Eligible Tender Offer. The final distribution of net assets per common share upon dissolution or the price per common share in an Eligible Tender Offer may be more than, equal to or less than the initial public offering price per common share.

CLOSED-END FUND STRUCTURE

The Trust is a non-diversified, closed-end management investment company with no operating history (commonly referred to as a closed-end fund). Closed-end funds differ from open-end funds (which are generally referred to as mutual funds) in that closed-end funds generally list their shares for trading on a stock exchange and do not redeem their shares at the request of the shareholder. This means that if you wish to sell your shares of a closed-end fund you must trade them on the stock exchange like any other stock at the prevailing market price at that time. In a mutual fund, if the shareholder wishes to sell shares of the fund, the mutual fund will redeem or buy back the shares at NAV. Also, mutual funds generally offer new shares on a continuous basis to new investors and closed-end funds generally do not. The continuous inflows and outflows of assets in a mutual fund can make it difficult to manage the fund's investments. By comparison, closed-end funds are generally able to stay more fully invested in securities that are consistent with their investment objectives and also have greater flexibility to make certain types of investments and to use certain investment strategies, such as financial leverage and investments in illiquid securities.

Shares of closed-end funds frequently trade at a discount to their NAV. Because of this possibility and the recognition that any such discount may not be in the interest of shareholders, the Board might consider from time to time engaging in open-market repurchases, tender offers for shares or other programs intended to reduce the discount. We cannot guarantee or assure, however, that the Board will decide to engage in any of these actions. Nor is there any guarantee or assurance that such actions, if undertaken, would result in the shares trading at a

[Table of Contents](#)

price equal or close to the NAV. See “Repurchase of Common Shares” below and “Repurchase of Common Shares” in the SAI. The Board might also consider converting the Trust to an open-end mutual fund, which would also require a vote of the shareholders of the Trust.

REPURCHASE OF COMMON SHARES

Shares of closed-end investment companies often trade at a discount to their NAVs and the Trust’s common shares may also trade at a discount to their NAV, although it is possible that they may trade at a premium above NAV. The market price of the Trust’s common shares will be determined by such factors as relative demand for and supply of such common shares in the market, the Trust’s NAV, general market and economic conditions and other factors beyond the control of the Trust. See “Net Asset Value” and “Description of Shares—Common Shares.” Although the Trust’s common shareholders will not have the right to redeem their common shares, the Trust may take action to repurchase common shares in the open market or make tender offers for its common shares. This may have the effect of reducing any market discount from NAV.

There is no assurance that, if action is undertaken to repurchase or tender for common shares, such action will result in the common shares trading at a price which approximates their NAV. Although share repurchases and tender offers could have a favorable effect on the market price of the Trust’s common shares, you should be aware that the acquisition of common shares by the Trust will decrease the capital of the Trust and, therefore, may have the effect of increasing the Trust’s expense ratio and decreasing the asset coverage with respect to any borrowings or preferred shares outstanding. Any share repurchases or tender offers will be made in accordance with the requirements of the Exchange Act, the Investment Company Act and the principal stock exchange on which the common shares are traded. For additional information, see “Repurchase of Common Shares” in the SAI.

TAX MATTERS

The following discussion is a brief summary of certain U.S. federal income tax considerations affecting the Trust and the purchase, ownership and disposition of the Trust’s common shares. A more detailed discussion of the tax rules applicable to the Trust and its common shareholders can be found in the SAI that is incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Except as otherwise noted, this discussion assumes you are a taxable U.S. holder (as defined below) and that you hold your common shares as capital assets for U.S. federal income tax purposes (generally, assets held for investment). This discussion is based upon current provisions of the Code, the regulations promulgated thereunder and judicial and administrative authorities, all of which are subject to change or differing interpretations by the courts or the Internal Revenue Service (the “IRS”), possibly with retroactive effect. No attempt is made to present a detailed explanation of all U.S. federal tax concerns affecting the Trust and its common shareholders. **The discussion set forth herein does not constitute tax advice and potential investors are urged to consult their own tax advisers to determine the specific U.S. federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences to them of investing in the Trust.**

In addition, no attempt is made to address tax considerations applicable to an investor with a special tax status, such as a financial institution, REIT, insurance company, regulated investment company, individual retirement account, other tax-exempt organization, dealer in securities or currencies, person holding shares of the Trust as part of a hedging, integrated, conversion or straddle transaction, trader in securities that has elected the mark-to-market method of accounting for its securities, U.S. holder (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar, investor with “applicable financial statements” within the meaning of Section 451(b) of the Code, or non-U.S. investor. Furthermore, this discussion does not reflect possible application of the alternative minimum tax.

Table of Contents

A U.S. holder is a beneficial owner that is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- a citizen or individual resident of the United States (including certain former citizens and former long-term residents);
- a corporation or other entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia;
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or
- a trust with respect to which a court within the United States is able to exercise primary supervision over its administration and one or more U.S. persons have the authority to control all of its substantial decisions or the trust has made a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury regulations to be treated as a U.S. person.

Taxation of the Trust

The Trust has elected to be treated as a RIC under Subchapter M of the Code. In order to qualify as a RIC, the Trust must, among other things, satisfy certain requirements relating to the sources of its income, diversification of its assets, and distribution of its income to its shareholders. First, the Trust must derive at least 90% of its annual gross income from dividends, interest, payments with respect to securities loans, gains from the sale or other disposition of stock or securities or foreign currencies, or other income (including but not limited to gains from options, futures and forward contracts) derived with respect to its business of investing in such stock, securities or currencies, or net income derived from interests in “qualified publicly traded partnerships” (as defined in the Code) (the “90% gross income test”). Second, the Trust must diversify its holdings so that, at the close of each quarter of its taxable year, (i) at least 50% of the value of its total assets consists of cash, cash items, U.S. Government securities, securities of other RICs and other securities, with such other securities limited in respect of any one issuer to an amount not greater in value than 5% of the value of the Trust’s total assets and to not more than 10% of the outstanding voting securities of such issuer, and (ii) not more than 25% of the value of the total assets is invested in the securities (other than U.S. Government securities and securities of other RICs) of any one issuer, any two or more issuers controlled by the Trust and engaged in the same, similar or related trades or businesses, or any one or more “qualified publicly traded partnerships.”

As long as the Trust qualifies as a RIC, the Trust will generally not be subject to corporate-level U.S. federal income tax on income and gains that it distributes each taxable year to its shareholders, provided that in such taxable year it distributes at least 90% of the sum of (i) its net tax-exempt interest income, if any, and (ii) its “investment company taxable income” (which includes, among other items, dividends, taxable interest, taxable original issue discount and market discount income, income from securities lending, net short-term capital gain in excess of net long-term capital loss, and any other taxable income other than “net capital gain” (as defined below) and is reduced by deductible expenses) determined without regard to the deduction for dividends paid. The Trust may retain for investment its net capital gain (which consists of the excess of its net long-term capital gain over its net short-term capital loss). However, if the Trust retains any net capital gain or any investment company taxable income, it will be subject to tax at regular corporate rates on the amount retained.

The Code imposes a 4% nondeductible excise tax on the Trust to the extent the Trust does not distribute by the end of any calendar year at least the sum of (i) 98% of its ordinary income (not taking into account any capital gain or loss) for the calendar year and (ii) 98.2% of its capital gain in excess of its capital loss (adjusted for certain ordinary losses) for a one-year period generally ending on October 31 of the calendar year (unless an election is made to use the Trust’s fiscal year). In addition, the minimum amounts that must be distributed in any year to avoid the excise tax will be increased or decreased to reflect any under-distribution or over-distribution, as the case may be, from the previous year. For purposes of the excise tax, the Trust will be deemed to have distributed any income on which it paid U.S. federal income tax. While the Trust intends to distribute any income and capital gain in the manner necessary to minimize imposition of the 4% nondeductible excise tax, there can be no assurance that sufficient amounts of the Trust’s taxable income and capital gain will be distributed to entirely avoid the imposition of the excise tax. In that event, the Trust will be liable for the excise tax only on the amount by which it does not meet the foregoing distribution requirement.

[Table of Contents](#)

If in any taxable year the Trust should fail to qualify under Subchapter M of the Code for tax treatment as a RIC, the Trust would incur a regular corporate U.S. federal income tax upon all of its taxable income for that year, and all distributions to its shareholders (including distributions of net capital gain) would be taxable to shareholders as ordinary dividend income for U.S. federal income tax purposes to the extent of the Trust's earnings and profits. Provided that certain holding period and other requirements were met, such dividends would be eligible (i) to be treated as qualified dividend income in the case of shareholders taxed as individuals and (ii) for the dividends received deduction in the case of corporate shareholders. In addition, to qualify again to be taxed as a RIC in a subsequent year, the Trust would be required to distribute to shareholders its earnings and profits attributable to non-RIC years. In addition, if the Trust failed to qualify as a RIC for a period greater than two taxable years, then, in order to qualify as a RIC in a subsequent year, the Trust would be required to elect to recognize and pay tax on any net built-in gain (the excess of aggregate gain, including items of income, over aggregate loss that would have been realized if the Trust had been liquidated) or, alternatively, be subject to taxation on such built-in gain recognized for a period of five years.

The remainder of this discussion assumes that the Trust qualifies for taxation as a RIC.

The Trust's Investments. Certain of the Trust's investment practices are subject to special and complex U.S. federal income tax provisions (including mark-to-market, constructive sale, straddle, wash sale, short sale and other rules) that may, among other things, (i) disallow, suspend or otherwise limit the allowance of certain losses or deductions, (ii) convert lower taxed long-term capital gains or qualified dividend income into higher taxed short-term capital gains or ordinary income, (iii) convert ordinary loss or a deduction into capital loss (the deductibility of which is more limited), (iv) cause the Trust to recognize income or gain without a corresponding receipt of cash, (v) adversely affect the time as to when a purchase or sale of stock or securities is deemed to occur, (vi) adversely alter the characterization of certain complex financial transactions and (vii) produce income that will not be "qualified" income for purposes of the 90% annual gross income requirement described above. These U.S. federal income tax provisions could therefore affect the amount, timing and character of distributions to common shareholders. The Trust intends to monitor its transactions and may make certain tax elections and may be required to dispose of securities to mitigate the effect of these provisions and prevent disqualification of the Trust as a RIC. Additionally, the Trust may be required to limit its activities in derivative instruments in order to enable it to maintain its RIC status.

The Trust may invest a portion of its net assets in below investment grade securities. Investments in these types of securities may present special tax issues for the Trust. U.S. federal income tax rules are not entirely clear about issues such as when the Trust may cease to accrue interest, original issue discount or market discount, when and to what extent deductions may be taken for bad debts or worthless securities, how payments received on obligations in default should be allocated between principal and income and whether modifications or exchanges of debt obligations in a bankruptcy or workout context are taxable. These and other issues could affect the Trust's ability to distribute sufficient income to preserve its status as a RIC or to avoid the imposition of U.S. federal income or excise tax.

Certain debt securities acquired by the Trust may be treated as debt securities that were originally issued at a discount. Generally, the amount of the original issue discount is treated as interest income and is included in taxable income (and required to be distributed by the Trust in order to qualify as a RIC and avoid U.S. federal income tax or the 4% excise tax on undistributed income) over the term of the security, even though payment of that amount is not received until a later time, usually when the debt security matures.

If the Trust purchases a debt security on a secondary market at a price lower than its adjusted issue price, the excess of the adjusted issue price over the purchase price is "market discount." Unless the Trust makes an election to accrue market discount on a current basis, generally, any gain realized on the disposition of, and any partial payment of principal on, a debt security having market discount is treated as ordinary income to the extent the gain, or principal payment, does not exceed the "accrued market discount" on the debt security. Market discount generally accrues in equal daily installments. If the Trust ultimately collects less on the debt instrument than its purchase price plus the market discount previously included in income, the Trust may not be able to benefit from any offsetting loss deductions.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Trust may invest in preferred securities or other securities the U.S. federal income tax treatment of which may not be clear or may be subject to recharacterization by the IRS. To the extent the tax treatment of such securities or the income from such securities differs from the tax treatment expected by the Trust, it could affect the timing or character of income recognized by the Trust, potentially requiring the Trust to purchase or sell securities, or otherwise change its portfolio, in order to comply with the tax rules applicable to RICs under the Code.

Gain or loss on the sale of securities by the Trust will generally be long-term capital gain or loss if the securities have been held by the Trust for more than one year. Gain or loss on the sale of securities held for one year or less will be short-term capital gain or loss.

Because the Trust may invest in foreign securities, its income from such securities may be subject to non-U.S. taxes. If more than 50% of the Trust's total assets at the close of its taxable year consists of stock or securities of foreign corporations, the Trust may elect for U.S. federal income tax purposes to treat foreign income taxes paid by it as paid by its shareholders. The Trust may qualify for and make this election in some, but not necessarily all, of its taxable years. If the Trust were to make such an election, shareholders would be required to take into account an amount equal to their pro rata portions of such foreign taxes in computing their taxable income and then treat an amount equal to those foreign taxes as a U.S. federal income tax deduction or as a foreign tax credit against their U.S. federal income tax liability. A taxpayer's ability to use a foreign tax deduction or credit is subject to limitations under the Code. Shortly after any year for which it makes such an election, the Trust will report to its shareholder the amount per share of such foreign income tax that must be included in each shareholder's gross income and the amount that may be available for the deduction or credit.

Foreign currency gain or loss on foreign currency exchange contracts, non-U.S. dollar-denominated securities contracts, and non-U.S. dollar-denominated futures contracts, options and forward contracts that are not section 1256 contracts (as defined below) generally will be treated as ordinary income and loss.

Income from options on individual securities written by the Trust will not be recognized by the Trust for tax purposes until an option is exercised, lapses or is subject to a "closing transaction" (as defined by applicable regulations) pursuant to which the Trust's obligations with respect to the option are otherwise terminated. If the option lapses without exercise, the premiums received by the Trust from the writing of such options will generally be characterized as short-term capital gain. If the Trust enters into a closing transaction, the difference between the premiums received and the amount paid by the Trust to close out its position will generally be treated as short-term capital gain or loss. If an option written by the Trust is exercised, thereby requiring the Trust to sell the underlying security, the premium will increase the amount realized upon the sale of the security, and the character of any gain on such sale of the underlying security as short-term or long-term capital gain will depend on the holding period of the Trust in the underlying security. Because the Trust will not have control over the exercise of the options it writes, such exercises or other required sales of the underlying securities may cause the Trust to realize gains or losses at inopportune times.

Index options that qualify as "section 1256 contracts" will generally be "marked-to-market" for U.S. federal income tax purposes. As a result, the Trust will generally recognize gain or loss on the last day of each taxable year equal to the difference between the value of the option on that date and the adjusted basis of the option. The adjusted basis of the option will consequently be increased by such gain or decreased by such loss. Any gain or loss with respect to options on indices and sectors that qualify as "section 1256 contracts" will be treated as short-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 40% of such gain or loss and long-term capital gain or loss to the extent of 60% of such gain or loss. Because the mark-to-market rules may cause the Trust to recognize gain in advance of the receipt of cash, the Trust may be required to dispose of investments in order to meet its distribution requirements. "Mark-to-market" losses may be suspended or otherwise limited if such losses are part of a straddle or similar transaction.

[Table of Contents](#)

Taxation of Common Shareholders

The Trust will either distribute or retain for reinvestment all or part of its net capital gain. If any such gain is retained, the Trust will be subject to a corporate income tax on such retained amount. In that event, the Trust expects to report the retained amount as undistributed capital gain in a notice to its common shareholders, each of whom, if subject to U.S. federal income tax on long-term capital gains, (i) will be required to include in income for U.S. federal income tax purposes as long-term capital gain its share of such undistributed amounts, (ii) will be entitled to credit its proportionate share of the tax paid by the Trust against its U.S. federal income tax liability and to claim refunds to the extent that the credit exceeds such liability and (iii) will increase its basis in its common shares by the amount of undistributed capital gains included in the shareholder's income less the tax deemed paid by the shareholder under clause (ii).

Distributions paid to you by the Trust from its net capital gain, if any, that the Trust properly reports as capital gain dividends ("capital gain dividends") are taxable as long-term capital gains, regardless of how long you have held your common shares. All other dividends paid to you by the Trust (including dividends from net short-term capital gains or tax-exempt interest, if any) from its current or accumulated earnings and profits ("ordinary income dividends") are generally subject to tax as ordinary income. Provided that certain holding period and other requirements are met, ordinary income dividends (if properly reported by the Trust) may qualify (i) for the dividends received deduction in the case of corporate shareholders to the extent that the Trust's income consists of dividend income from U.S. corporations, and (ii) in the case of individual shareholders, as "qualified dividend income" eligible to be taxed at long-term capital gains rates to the extent that the Trust receives qualified dividend income. Qualified dividend income is, in general, dividend income from taxable domestic corporations and certain qualified foreign corporations (e.g., generally, foreign corporations incorporated in a possession of the United States or in certain countries with a qualifying comprehensive tax treaty with the United States, or whose stock with respect to which such dividend is paid is readily tradable on an established securities market in the United States). There can be no assurance as to what portion, if any, of the Trust's distributions will constitute qualified dividend income or be eligible for the dividends received deduction.

Any distributions you receive that are in excess of the Trust's current and accumulated earnings and profits will be treated as a return of capital to the extent of your adjusted tax basis in your common shares, and thereafter as capital gain from the sale of common shares. The amount of any Trust distribution that is treated as a return of capital will reduce your adjusted tax basis in your common shares, thereby increasing your potential gain or reducing your potential loss on any subsequent sale or other disposition of your common shares.

Common shareholders may be entitled to offset their capital gain dividends with capital losses. The Code contains a number of statutory provisions affecting when capital losses may be offset against capital gain, and limiting the use of losses from certain investments and activities. Accordingly, common shareholders that have capital losses are urged to consult their tax advisers.

Dividends and other taxable distributions are taxable to you even though they are reinvested in additional common shares of the Trust. Dividends and other distributions paid by the Trust are generally treated under the Code as received by you at the time the dividend or distribution is made. If, however, the Trust pays you a dividend in January that was declared in the previous October, November or December to common shareholders of record on a specified date in one of such months, then such dividend will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as being paid by the Trust and received by you on December 31 of the year in which the dividend was declared. In addition, certain other distributions made after the close of the Trust's taxable year may be "spilled back" and treated as paid by the Trust (except for purposes of the 4% nondeductible excise tax) during such taxable year. In such case, you will be treated as having received such dividends in the taxable year in which the distributions were actually made.

The price of common shares purchased at any time may reflect the amount of a forthcoming distribution. Those purchasing common shares just prior to the record date of a distribution will receive a distribution which will be taxable to them even though it represents, economically, a return of invested capital.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Trust will send you information after the end of each year setting forth the amount and tax status of any distributions paid to you by the Trust.

The sale or other disposition of common shares will generally result in capital gain or loss to you and will be long-term capital gain or loss if you have held such common shares for more than one year at the time of sale. Any loss upon the sale or other disposition of common shares held for six months or less will be treated as long-term capital loss to the extent of any capital gain dividends received (including amounts credited as an undistributed capital gain dividend) by you with respect to such common shares. Any loss you recognize on a sale or other disposition of common shares will be disallowed if you acquire other common shares (whether through the automatic reinvestment of dividends or otherwise) within a 61-day period beginning 30 days before and ending 30 days after your sale or exchange of the common shares. In such case, your tax basis in the common shares acquired will be adjusted to reflect the disallowed loss.

If, as described in the section “Limited Term and Eligible Tender Offer” above, the Trust conducts a tender offer for its shares, shareholders who offer, and are able to sell all of the shares they hold or are deemed to hold in response to such tender offer generally will be treated as having sold their shares and generally will recognize a capital gain or loss. In the case of shareholders who tender or are able to sell fewer than all of their shares, it is possible that any amounts that the shareholder receives in such repurchase will be taxable as a dividend to such shareholder. Shares actually owned, as well as shares constructively owned under Section 318 of the Code, will generally be taken into account for purposes of the foregoing rules. In addition, there is a risk that shareholders who do not tender any of their shares for repurchase, or whose percentage interest in the Trust otherwise increases as a result of the tender offer, will be treated for U.S. federal income tax purposes as having received a taxable dividend distribution as a result of their proportionate increase in the ownership of the Trust. The Trust’s use of cash to repurchase shares could adversely affect its ability to satisfy the distribution requirements for treatment as a regulated investment company. Different tax consequences may apply to tendering and non-tendering common shareholders in connection with a tender offer, and these consequences will be disclosed in the related offering documents.

If the Trust liquidates, shareholders generally will realize capital gain or loss upon such liquidation in an amount equal to the difference between the amount of cash or other property received by the shareholder (including any property deemed received by reason of its being placed in a liquidating trust) and the shareholder’s adjusted tax basis in its common shares. Any such gain or loss will be long-term if the shareholder is treated as having a holding period in the Trust shares of greater than one year, and otherwise will be short-term.

Current U.S. federal income tax law taxes both long-term and short-term capital gain of corporations at the rates applicable to ordinary income. For non-corporate taxpayers, short-term capital gain is currently taxed at rates applicable to ordinary income while long-term capital gain generally is taxed at a reduced maximum rate. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations under the Code.

Certain U.S. holders who are individuals, estates or trusts and whose income exceeds certain thresholds will be required to pay a 3.8% Medicare tax on all or a portion of their “net investment income,” which includes dividends received from the Trust and capital gains from the sale or other disposition of the Trust’s common shares.

A common shareholder that is a nonresident alien individual or a foreign corporation (a “foreign investor”) generally will be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at the rate of 30% (or possibly a lower rate provided by an applicable tax treaty) on ordinary income dividends (except as discussed below). In general, U.S. federal withholding tax and U.S. federal income tax will not apply to any gain or income realized by a foreign investor in respect of any distribution of net capital gain (including amounts credited as an undistributed capital gain dividend) or upon the sale or other disposition of common shares of the Trust. Different tax consequences may result if the foreign investor is engaged in a trade or business in the United States or, in the case of an individual, is present in the United States for 183 days or more during a taxable year and certain other conditions are met. Foreign investors should consult their tax advisers regarding the tax consequences of investing in the Trust’s common shares.

[Table of Contents](#)

Ordinary income dividends properly reported by a RIC are generally exempt from U.S. federal withholding tax where they (i) are paid in respect of the RIC's "qualified net interest income" (generally, its U.S.-source interest income, other than certain contingent interest and interest from obligations of a corporation or partnership in which the RIC is at least a 10% shareholder, reduced by expenses that are allocable to such income) or (ii) are paid in respect of the RIC's "qualified short-term capital gains" (generally, the excess of the RIC's net short-term capital gain over its long-term capital loss for such taxable year). Depending on its circumstances, the Trust may report all, some or none of its potentially eligible dividends as such qualified net interest income or as qualified short-term capital gains, and/or treat such dividends, in whole or in part, as ineligible for this exemption from withholding. In order to qualify for this exemption from withholding, a foreign investor needs to comply with applicable certification requirements relating to its non-U.S. status (including, in general, furnishing an IRS Form W-8BEN, W-8BEN-E or substitute Form). In the case of common shares held through an intermediary, the intermediary may have withheld even if the Trust reported the payment as qualified net interest income or qualified short-term capital gain. Foreign investors should contact their intermediaries with respect to the application of these rules to their accounts. There can be no assurance as to what portion of the Trust's distributions would qualify for favorable treatment as qualified net interest income or qualified short-term capital gains.

In addition, withholding at a rate of 30% will apply to dividends paid in respect of common shares of the Trust held by or through certain foreign financial institutions (including investment funds), unless such institution enters into an agreement with the Treasury to report, on an annual basis, information with respect to shares in, and accounts maintained by, the institution to the extent such shares or accounts are held by certain U.S. persons and by certain non-U.S. entities that are wholly or partially owned by U.S. persons and to withhold on certain payments. Accordingly, the entity through which common shares of the Trust are held will affect the determination of whether such withholding is required. Similarly, dividends paid in respect of common shares of the Trust held by an investor that is a non-financial foreign entity that does not qualify under certain exemptions will be subject to withholding at a rate of 30%, unless such entity either (i) certifies that such entity does not have any "substantial United States owners" or (ii) provides certain information regarding the entity's "substantial United States owners," which the Trust or applicable withholding agent will in turn provide to the Secretary of the Treasury. An intergovernmental agreement between the United States and an applicable foreign country, or future Treasury regulations or other guidance, may modify these requirements. The Trust will not pay any additional amounts to common shareholders in respect of any amounts withheld. Foreign investors are encouraged to consult with their tax advisers regarding the possible implications of these rules on their investment in the Trust's common shares.

U.S. federal backup withholding tax may be required on dividends, distributions and sale proceeds payable to certain non-exempt common shareholders who fail to supply their correct taxpayer identification number (in the case of individuals, generally, their social security number) or to make required certifications, or who are otherwise subject to backup withholding. Backup withholding is not an additional tax and any amount withheld may be refunded or credited against your U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, provided that you timely furnish the required information to the IRS.

Ordinary income dividends, capital gain dividends, and gain from the sale or other disposition of common shares of the Trust also may be subject to state, local, and/or foreign taxes. Common shareholders are urged to consult their own tax advisers regarding specific questions about U.S. federal, state, local or foreign tax consequences to them of investing in the Trust.

The foregoing is a general and abbreviated summary of certain provisions of the Code and the Treasury regulations currently in effect as they directly govern the taxation of the Trust and its common shareholders. These provisions are subject to change by legislative or administrative action, and any such change may be retroactive. A more detailed discussion of the tax rules applicable to the Trust and its common shareholders can be found in the SAI that is incorporated by reference into this prospectus. Common shareholders are urged to consult their tax advisers regarding specific questions as to U.S. federal, state, local and foreign income or other taxes.

Please refer to the SAI for more detailed information. You are urged to consult your tax adviser.

[Table of Contents](#)

UNDERWRITERS

Under the terms and subject to the conditions in an underwriting agreement, dated the date of this prospectus, the Underwriters named below, for whom Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, BofA Securities, Inc., UBS Securities LLC, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC are acting as representatives (the “Representatives”), have severally agreed to purchase, and the Trust has agreed to sell to them, the number of the Trust’s common shares indicated below.

Underwriter	Number of Shares
Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC	24,925,000
BofA Securities, Inc.	15,100,000
UBS Securities LLC	11,000,000
Raymond James & Associates, Inc.	5,200,000
Wells Fargo Securities, LLC	3,600,000
Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc.	1,600,000
Oppenheimer & Co. Inc.	2,075,000
RBC Capital Markets, LLC	1,505,000
Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated	2,000,000
Arcadia Securities	105,000
B. Riley Wealth Management, Inc.	300,000
BB&T Capital Markets, a division of BB&T Securities, LLC	365,000
D.A. Davidson & Co.	450,000
Incapital LLC	215,000
Janney Montgomery Scott LLC	570,000
JonesTrading Institutional Services LLC	375,000
Ladenburg Thalmann & Co. Inc.	175,000
Maxim Group LLC	166,000
Newbridge Securities Corporation	25,000
Pershing LLC	205,000
Click IPO Securities, LLC	10,000
Joseph Gunnar & Co., LLC	34,000
Total	70,000,000

The Underwriters are offering the common shares subject to their acceptance of the common shares from the Trust and subject to prior sale. The underwriting agreement provides that the obligations of the several Underwriters to pay for and accept delivery of the common shares offered by this prospectus are subject to the approval of certain legal matters by their counsel and to certain other conditions. The Underwriters are obligated to take and pay for all of the common shares offered by this prospectus if any such shares are taken. However, the Underwriters are not required to take or pay for the common shares covered by the Underwriters’ over-allotment option described below.

The Underwriters initially propose to offer part of the common shares directly to the public at the public offering price listed on the cover page of this prospectus and part to certain dealers at a price that represents a concession not in excess of \$0.40 per common share under the public offering price. Investors must pay for any common shares purchased in this offering on or before June 28, 2019.

The Trust has granted to the Underwriters an option, exercisable for 45 days from the date of this prospectus, to purchase up to 8,734,000 additional common shares at the public offering price listed on the cover page of this prospectus. The Underwriters may exercise this option solely for the purpose of covering over-allotments, if any, made in connection with the offering of the common shares offered by this prospectus. To the extent the option is exercised, each Underwriter will become obligated, subject to certain conditions, to purchase approximately the same percentage of the additional

common shares as the number listed next to the Underwriter's name in the preceding table bears to the total number of common shares listed next to the names of all Underwriters in the preceding table.

[Table of Contents](#)

The following table shows the per share and total public offering price, underwriting discounts and commissions (sales load) and proceeds to the Trust. These amounts are shown assuming both no exercise and full exercise of the Underwriters' option to purchase up to an additional 8,734,000 common shares.

	<u>Per Share</u>	<u>Total</u>	
		<u>No Exercise</u>	<u>Full Exercise</u>
Public Offering Price	\$ 20.00	\$1,400,000,000	\$1,574,680,000
Sales Load	None	None	None
Proceeds to the Trust	\$ 20.00	\$1,400,000,000	\$1,574,680,000

The compensation and fees paid to the Underwriters described below under "Additional Compensation Paid by the Advisor" are not reimbursable to the Advisor by the Trust and are therefore not reflected in the table above.

The Advisor (and not the Trust) will pay all organizational expenses of the Trust and all offering costs associated with this offering. The Trust is not obligated to repay any such organizational expenses or offering costs paid by the Advisor.

The Underwriters have informed the Trust that they do not intend sales to discretionary accounts to exceed five percent of the total number of common shares offered by them.

In order to meet requirements for listing the common shares on the NYSE, the Underwriters have undertaken to sell lots of 100 or more shares to a minimum of 400 beneficial owners in the United States. The minimum investment requirement is 100 common shares (\$2,000).

The Trust's common shares have been approved for listing on the NYSE, subject to notice of issuance, under the symbol "BSTZ".

The Trust has agreed that, without the prior written consent of the Representatives on behalf of the Underwriters, it will not, during the period ending 180 days after the date of this prospectus:

- offer, pledge, sell, contract to sell, sell any option or contract to purchase, purchase any option or contract to sell, grant any option, right or warrant to purchase, lend or otherwise transfer or dispose of, directly or indirectly, any common shares or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for common shares;
- file any registration statement with the SEC relating to the offering of any common shares or any securities convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for common shares; or
- enter into any swap or other arrangement that transfers to another, in whole or in part, any of the economic consequences of ownership of the common shares;

whether any such transaction described above is to be settled by delivery of common shares or such other securities, in cash or otherwise.

The restrictions described in the immediately preceding paragraph do not apply to:

- the sale of common shares to the Underwriters;
- any common shares issued pursuant to the Reinvestment Plan; or
- any preferred share issuance.

The Representatives, in their sole discretion, may release the common shares and other securities subject to the lock-up agreement described above in whole or in part at any time with or without notice.

Table of Contents

In order to facilitate the offering of the common shares, the Underwriters may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the price of the common shares. Specifically, the Underwriters may sell more common shares than they are obligated to purchase under the underwriting agreement, creating a short position. A short sale is covered if the short position is no greater than the number of common shares available for purchase by the Underwriters under the over-allotment option. The Underwriters can close out a covered short sale by exercising the over-allotment option or purchasing common shares in the open market. In determining the source of common shares to close out a covered short sale, the Underwriters will consider, among other things, the open market price of the common shares compared to the price available under the over-allotment option. The Underwriters may also sell common shares in excess of the over-allotment option, creating a naked short position. The Underwriters must close out any naked short position by purchasing common shares in the open market. A naked short position is more likely to be created if the Underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the price of the common shares in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering. As an additional means of facilitating the offering, the Underwriters may bid for, and purchase, common shares in the open market to stabilize the price of the common shares. Finally, the underwriting syndicate may also reclaim selling concessions allowed to an Underwriter or a dealer for distributing the common shares in the offering. Any of these activities may raise or maintain the market price of the common shares above independent market levels or prevent or retard a decline in the market price of the common shares. The Underwriters are not required to engage in these activities, and may end any of these activities at any time.

The Trust, the Advisor and the Underwriters have agreed to indemnify each other against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act.

A prospectus in electronic format may be made available on websites maintained by one or more Underwriters, or selling group members, if any, participating in this offering. The Representatives may agree to allocate a number of common shares to Underwriters for sale to their online brokerage account holders. Internet distributions will be allocated by the Representatives to Underwriters that may make Internet distributions on the same basis as other allocations.

Prior to this offering, there has been no public market for the common shares. The initial public offering price for the common shares was determined by negotiation among the Trust, the Advisor and the Representatives. There can be no assurance, however, that the price at which the common shares trade after this offering will not be lower than the price at which they are sold by the Underwriters or that an active trading market in the common shares will develop and continue after this offering.

Prior to the public offering of the common shares, BlackRock Financial Management, Inc., an affiliate of the Advisor, purchased common shares from the Trust in an amount satisfying the net worth requirements of Section 14(a) of the Investment Company Act, which requires the Trust to have a net worth of at least \$100,000 prior to making a public offering. As of the date of this prospectus, BlackRock Financial Management, Inc. owned 100% of the Trust's outstanding common shares and therefore may be deemed to control the Trust until such time as it owns less than 25% of the Trust's outstanding common shares, which is expected to occur upon the closing of this offering.

The Trust anticipates that the Representatives and certain other Underwriters may from time to time act as brokers and dealers in connection with the execution of its portfolio transactions after they have ceased to be Underwriters and, subject to certain restrictions, may act as such brokers while they are Underwriters.

The Underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial lending, investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, derivatives, financing and brokerage activities. Certain of the Underwriters or their respective affiliates from time to time have provided in the past, and may provide in the future, securities trading, commercial lending, investment banking, financial advisory, investment

[Table of Contents](#)

management, principal investment, hedging, derivatives, financing and brokerage services to the Trust, certain of its executive officers and affiliates and the Advisor and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business, for which they have received, and may receive, customary fees and expenses.

No action has been taken in any jurisdiction (except in the United States) that would permit a public offering of the common shares, or the possession, circulation or distribution of this prospectus or any other material relating to the Trust or the common shares where action for that purpose is required. Accordingly, the common shares may not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, and neither this prospectus nor any other offering material or advertisements in connection with the common shares may be distributed or published, in or from any country or jurisdiction except in compliance with the applicable rules and regulations of any such country or jurisdiction.

The principal business address of Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC is 1585 Broadway, New York, New York 10036. The principal business address of BofA Securities, Inc. is One Bryant Park, New York, New York 10036. The principal business address of UBS Securities LLC is 1285 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10019. The principal business address of Raymond James & Associates, Inc. is 880 Carillon Parkway, St. Petersburg, Florida 33716. The principal business address of Wells Fargo Securities, LLC is 550 South Tryon Street, Charlotte, North Carolina 28202.

Additional Compensation Paid by the Advisor

The Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay to each of Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, BofA Securities, Inc. (or an affiliate), UBS Securities LLC, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, from its own assets, an upfront structuring fee in the amount of \$5,483,257.60, \$3,353,727.80, \$2,420,463.60, \$1,130,000 and \$824,212.60, respectively, for advice relating to the structure, design and organization of the Trust as well as services related to the sale and distribution of the common shares. If the over-allotment option is not exercised, the upfront structuring fee paid to each of Morgan Stanley & Co. LLC, BofA Securities, Inc. (or an affiliate), UBS Securities LLC, Raymond James & Associates, Inc. and Wells Fargo Securities, LLC will not exceed 0.3917%, 0.2396%, 0.1729%, 0.0807% and 0.0589%, respectively, of the total public offering price of the common shares. These services provided by these Underwriters to the Advisor are unrelated to the Advisor's function of advising the Trust as to its investments in securities or use of investment strategies and investment techniques.

The Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay each of Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc., Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., RBC Capital Markets, LLC, Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated, D.A. Davidson & Co. and Janney Montgomery Scott LLC, from its own assets, an upfront fee in the amount of \$376,466.60, \$485,195.20, \$353,000, \$460,000, \$52,500 and \$67,000, respectively, for services related to the distribution of the common shares. If the over-allotment option is not exercised, the upfront fee paid to each of Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc., Oppenheimer & Co. Inc., RBC Capital Markets, LLC, Stifel, Nicolaus & Company, Incorporated, D.A. Davidson & Co. and Janney Montgomery Scott LLC will not exceed 0.0269%, 0.0347%, 0.0252%, 0.0329%, 0.0038% and 0.0048%, respectively, of the total public offering price of the common shares. These services provided by these Underwriters to the Advisor are unrelated to the Advisor's function of advising the Trust as to its investments in securities or use of investment strategies and investment techniques.

The amount of these structuring and other fees are calculated based on the total respective sales of common shares by these Underwriters, including those common shares included in the Underwriters' over-allotment option, and will be paid regardless of whether some or all of the over-allotment option is exercised.

In addition, the Advisor (and not the Trust) has agreed to pay from its own assets, compensation of \$0.52 per common share to the Underwriters in connection with the offering, which aggregate amount will not exceed 2.60% of the total public offering price of the common shares.

Table of Contents

The Advisor and certain of its affiliates (and not the Trust) will pay compensation to certain registered representatives of BlackRock Investments, LLC (a registered broker-dealer and an affiliate of the Advisor) that participated in the marketing of the Trust's common shares in an aggregate amount that will not exceed 0.13% of the total public offering price of the common shares. The Advisor and certain of its affiliates (and not the Trust) pay this compensation in consideration of marketing activities conducted as part of these registered representatives' regular duties, which activities included providing information and education to partner firms about the Trust, discussing economic trends and market movements and providing assistance with marketing materials.

Total underwriting compensation determined in accordance with Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. ("FINRA") rules is summarized as follows. The Advisor has agreed to reimburse the Underwriters for the reasonable fees and disbursements of counsel to the Underwriters in connection with the review by FINRA of the terms of the sale of the common shares in an amount not to exceed \$30,000 in the aggregate, which amount will not exceed 0.0021% of the total public offering price of the common shares if the over-allotment option is not exercised. The sum total of all compensation to the Underwriters and registered representatives of BlackRock Investments, LLC in connection with this public offering of the common shares, including expense reimbursement and all forms of structuring and other fee payments to the Underwriters, will not exceed 3.8040% of the total public offering price of the common shares.

CUSTODIAN AND TRANSFER AGENT

The custodian of the assets of the Trust is State Street Bank and Trust Company, whose principal business address is One Lincoln Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02111. The custodian will be responsible for, among other things, receipt of and disbursement of funds from the Trust's accounts, establishment of segregated accounts as necessary, and transfer, exchange and delivery of Trust portfolio securities.

Computershare Trust Company, N.A., whose principal business address is 150 Royall Street, Canton, Massachusetts 02021, will serve as the Trust's transfer agent with respect to the common shares.

ADMINISTRATION AND ACCOUNTING SERVICES

State Street Bank and Trust Company will provide certain administration and accounting services to the Trust pursuant to an Administration and Fund Accounting Services Agreement (the "Administration Agreement"). Pursuant to the Administration Agreement, State Street Bank and Trust Company will provide the Trust with, among other things, customary fund accounting services, including computing the Trust's NAV and maintaining books, records and other documents relating to the Trust's financial and portfolio transactions, and customary fund administration services, including assisting the Trust with regulatory filings, tax compliance and other oversight activities. For these and other services it provides to the Trust, State Street Bank and Trust Company is paid a monthly fee from the Trust at an annual rate ranging from 0.0075% to 0.015% of the Trust's Managed Assets, along with an annual fixed fee ranging from \$0 to \$10,000 for the services it provides to the Trust.

INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Deloitte & Touche LLP, whose principal business address is 200 Berkeley Street, Boston, Massachusetts 02116, is the independent registered public accounting firm of the Trust and is expected to render an opinion annually on the financial statements of the Trust.

LEGAL OPINIONS

Certain legal matters in connection with the common shares will be passed upon for the Trust by Willkie Farr & Gallagher LLP, New York, New York. Weil, Gotshal & Manges LLP, New York, New York, advised the Underwriters in connection with the offering of the common shares. Willkie Farr & Gallagher LLP and Weil, Gotshal & Manges LLP may rely as to certain matters of Delaware law on the opinion of Morris, Nichols, Arsht & Tunnell LLP, Wilmington, Delaware.

PRIVACY PRINCIPLES OF THE TRUST

The Trust is committed to maintaining the privacy of shareholders and to safeguarding their non-public personal information. The following information is provided to help you understand what personal information the Trust collects, how we protect that information, and why in certain cases we may share such information with select other parties.

The Trust does not receive any non-public personal information relating to its shareholders who purchase shares through their broker-dealers. In the case of shareholders who are record holders of the Trust, the Trust receives personal non-public information on account applications or other forms. With respect to these shareholders, the Trust also has access to specific information regarding their transactions in the Trust.

The Trust does not disclose any non-public personal information about its shareholders or former shareholders to anyone, except as permitted by law or as is necessary in order to service our shareholders' accounts (for example, to a transfer agent).

The Trust restricts access to non-public personal information about its shareholders to BlackRock employees with a legitimate business need for the information. The Trust maintains physical, electronic and procedural safeguards designed to protect the non-public personal information of our shareholders.

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS FOR THE STATEMENT OF ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

<u>Use of Proceeds</u>	S-1
<u>Investment Objectives and Policies</u>	S-1
<u>Investment Policies and Techniques</u>	S-3
<u>Additional Risk Factors</u>	S-20
<u>Management of the Trust</u>	S-41
<u>Portfolio Transactions and Brokerage</u>	S-62
<u>Conflicts of Interest</u>	S-66
<u>Description of Shares</u>	S-74
<u>Repurchase of Common Shares</u>	S-75
<u>Tax Matters</u>	S-77
<u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	F-1
<u>Financial Statements</u>	F-2
<u>Appendix A: Ratings of Investments</u>	A-1
<u>Appendix B: Proxy Voting Policies—BlackRock U.S. Registered Funds</u>	B-1

BlackRock.

70,000,000 Shares

BlackRock Science and Technology Trust II

Common Shares

\$20.00 per share

PROSPECTUS

June 25, 2019

**Morgan Stanley
BofA Merrill Lynch
UBS Investment Bank
Raymond James
Wells Fargo Securities
Ameriprise Financial Services, Inc.
Oppenheimer & Co.
RBC Capital Markets
Stifel
Arcadia Securities
B. Riley Wealth Management
BB&T Capital Markets
D.A. Davidson & Co.
Incapital
Janney Montgomery Scott
JonesTrading
Ladenburg Thalmann
Maxim Group LLC
Newbridge Securities Corporation
Pershing LLC**

Until July 20, 2019 (25 days after the date of this prospectus), all dealers that buy, sell or trade the common shares, whether or not participating in this offering, may be required to deliver a prospectus. This delivery requirement is in addition to the dealers' obligations to deliver a prospectus when acting as underwriters and with respect to their unsold allotments or subscriptions.

BSTZ-PR-0619